

Long Discourses

Bhikkhu Sujato

LONG DISCOURSES

A faithful translation of the Dīgha Nikāya



translated and introduced by

BHIKKHU SUJATO

VOLUME 3

DN 24–34

THE CHAPTER WITH PĀṬIKAPUTTA

PĀTHIKAVAGGA

Long Discourses is a translation of the Dighanikāya by Bhikkhu Sujato.

Creative Commons Zero (CC0)

To the extent possible under law, Bhikkhu Sujato has waived all copyright and related or neighboring rights to *Long Discourses*.

This work is published from Australia.

This translation is an expression of an ancient spiritual text that has been passed down by the Buddhist tradition for the benefit of all sentient beings. It is dedicated to the public domain via Creative Commons Zero (CC0). You are encouraged to copy, reproduce, adapt, alter, or otherwise make use of this translation. The translator respectfully requests that any use be in accordance with the values and principles of the Buddhist community.

Web publication date 2018

This edition 2024-02-12 01:19:44

Publication type paperback

Edition ed5

Number of volumes 3

Publication ISBN 978-1-76132-052-1

Volume ISBN 978-1-76132-096-5

Publication URL <https://suttacentral.net/editions/dn/en/sujato>

Source URL <https://github.com/suttacentral/bilara-data/tree/published/translation/en/sujato/sutta/dn>

Publication number scpub2

Map of Jambudipa is by Jonas David Mitja Lang, and is released by him under Creative Commons Zero (CC0).

Published by SuttaCentral

*SuttaCentral,
c/o Alwis & Alwis Pty Ltd
Kaurana Country,
Suite 12,
198 Greenhill Road,
Eastwood,
SA 5063,
Australia*

Contents

Summary of Contents	vi
THE CHAPTER WITH PĀṬIKAPUTTA	
DN 24 About Pāṭikaputta (<i>Pāthikasutta</i>)	2
DN 25 The Lion's Roar at the Monastery of Lady Udumbarikā (<i>Udumbarikasutta</i>)	24
DN 26 The Wheel-Turning Monarch (<i>Cakkavattisutta</i>)	41
DN 27 What Came First (<i>Aggaññasutta</i>)	60
DN 28 Inspiring Confidence (<i>Sampasādanīyasutta</i>)	79
DN 29 An Impressive Discourse (<i>Pāsādikasutta</i>)	95
DN 30 The Marks of a Great Man (<i>Lakkhaṇasutta</i>)	116
DN 31 Advice to Sigālaka (<i>Siṅgālasutta</i>)	146
DN 32 The Āṭānāṭiya Protection (<i>Āṭānāṭīyasutta</i>)	159
DN 33 Reciting in Concert (<i>Saṅgītisutta</i>)	173
DN 34 Up to Ten (<i>Dasuttarasutta</i>)	224
Colophon	255

Summary of Contents

The Chapter with Pāṭikaputta (*Pāthikavagga*) Like the previous chapter, this contains a diverse range of discourses. It is named after the first discourse in the chapter. Among the discourses here are legendary accounts of the history and future of our world, which are extremely famous and influential in Buddhist circles.

DN 24: About Pāṭikaputta (*Pāthikasutta*) When Sunakkhatta threatens to disrobe, the Buddha is unimpressed. Rejecting showy displays of asceticism or wondrous powers, he demonstrates his pre-eminence.

DN 25: The Lion's Roar at Udumbarikā's Monastery (*Udumbarikasutta*) This discourse gives a specially good example of dialog between religions. The Buddha insists that he is not interested to make anyone give up their teacher or practices, but only to help people let go of suffering.

DN 26: The Wheel-Turning Monarch (*Cakkavattisutta*) In illustration of his dictum that one should rely on oneself, the Buddha gives a detailed account of the fall of a kingly lineage of the past, and the subsequent degeneration of society. This process, however, is not over, as the Buddha predicts that eventually society will fall into utter chaos. But far in the future, another Buddha, Metteyya, will arise in a time of peace and plenty.

DN 27: The Origin of the World (*Aggaññasutta*) In contrast with the brahmin's self-serving mythologies of the past, the Buddha presents an account of evolution that shows how human

choices are an integral part of the ecological balance, and how excessive greed destroys the order of nature.

DN 28: Inspiring Confidence (*Sampasādanīyasutta*) Shortly before he passes away, Venerable Sāriputta visits the Buddha and utters a moving eulogy of his great teacher.

DN 29: An Impressive Discourse (*Pāsādikasutta*) Following the death of Nigaṇṭha Nātaputta, the leader of the Jains, the Buddha emphasizes the stability and maturity of his own community. He encourages the community to come together after his death and recite the teachings in harmony.

DN 30: The Marks of a Great Man (*Lakkhaṇasutta*) This presents the brahmanical prophecy of the Great Man, and explains the 32 marks in detail. This discourse contains some of the latest and most complex verse forms in the canon.

DN 31: Advice to Sigālaka (*Sīgālasutta*) The Buddha encounters a young man who honors his dead parents by performing rituals. The Buddha recasts the meaningless rites in terms of virtuous conduct. This is the most detailed discourse on ethics for lay people.

DN 32: The Āṭānāṭiya Protection (*Āṭānāṭīyasutta*) Mighty spirits hold a congregation, and warn the Buddha that, since not all spirits are friendly, the mendicants should learn verses of protection.

DN 33: Reciting in Concert (*Saṅgītisutta*) The Buddha encourages Venerable Sāriputta to teach the mendicants, and he offers an extended listing of Buddhist doctrines arranged in numerical sequence.

DN 34: Up to Ten (*Dasuttarasutta*) This is similar to the previous, but with a different manner of exposition. These two discourses anticipate some of the methods of the Abhidhamma.

THE CHAPTER WITH
PĀṬIKAPUTTA

DN 24

About Pāṭikaputta

Pāthikasutta

1. The Story of Sunakkhatta

- 1.1.1 SO I HAVE HEARD. At one time the Buddha was staying in the land of the Mallas, near the Mallian town named Anupiya.¹ Then the Buddha robed up in the morning and, taking his bowl and robe, entered Anupiya for alms. Then it occurred to him, “It’s too early to wander for alms in Anupiya. Why don’t I go to visit the wanderer of the Bhaggava clan in his monastery?”²
- 1.2.1 So that’s what he did. Then the wanderer of the Bhaggava clan said to the Buddha, “Let the Blessed One come, sir! Welcome to the Blessed One, sir! It’s been a long time since you took the opportunity to come here. Please, sir, sit down, this seat is ready.”

1. This late sutta satirizes the failings of Sunakkhatta in a fashion so broad that it borders on slapstick. The town of Anupiya is mentioned only here.

2. The Bhaggava clan was descended from the ancient sage Bhagu (Sanskrit Bhṛgu). They received the gift of fire conveyed by Mātariśvan the wind from the god Agni (eg. Rig Veda 1.60.1). In Pali they appear as potters (eg. MN 81:19.3, MN 140:1.3, SN 1.50:11.2, SN 2.24:12.2). Archaeologists refer to the strata around the Buddha’s time as the Northern Black Polished Ware culture on account of the distinctive highly glazed polish that was achieved on the pottery of the time. This, together with the production of iron, marked a significant advance in the mastery of fire. Thus potters were no mere humble craftsmen, but leading technological innovators.

The Buddha sat on the seat spread out, while the wanderer of the Bhaggava clan took a low seat, sat to one side, and said to the Buddha, “Sir, a few days ago Sunakkhatta the Licchavi came to me and said:³ ‘Now, Bhaggava, I have rejected the Buddha. Now I no longer live dedicated to him.’ Sir, is what Sunakkhatta said true?” 1.2.7

“Indeed it is, Bhaggava. 1.2.14

A few days ago Sunakkhatta the Licchavi came to me, bowed, sat down to one side, and said: ‘Now I reject the Buddha! Now I shall no longer live dedicated to you.’ 1.3.1

When Sunakkhatta said this, I said to him, ‘But Sunakkhatta, did I ever say to you: “Come, live dedicated to me”?’⁴ 1.3.4

‘No, sir.’ 1.3.7

‘Or did you ever say to me: “Sir, I shall live dedicated to the Buddha”?’ 1.3.8

‘No, sir.’ 1.3.10

‘So it seems that I did not ask you to live dedicated to me, nor did you say you would live dedicated to me. In that case, you silly man, who are you and what are you rejecting? See how far you have strayed!’ 1.3.11

‘But sir, the Buddha never performs any superhuman demonstrations of psychic power for me.’⁵ 1.4.1

‘But Sunakkhatta, did I ever say to you: “Come, live dedicated to me and I will perform a superhuman demonstration of psychic power for you”?’ 1.4.2

3. Sunakkhatta’s dismal spiritual career began when he met the Buddha in MN 105. In DN 6:5.3 we learn that, after being ordained three years, he spoke of his limited success in meditation. The current sutta and MN 12 deal with Sunakkhatta’s bitter criticisms of the Buddha shortly after his disrobal.

4. A candidate for ordination is expected to go for refuge to the Buddha, and may be said to live dedicated (*uddissa*) to him (Kd 1:23.4.1). Moreover, a noble disciple is unable to dedicate themselves to another teacher (AN 1.276:1.1). But when the Buddha called candidates to go forth, he spoke of practice rather than personal devotion: “Come, monk. The Teaching is well-proclaimed. Practice the spiritual life to make a complete end of suffering.” (Kd 1:6.32.3)

5. He makes a similar criticism at MN 12:3.8.

- 1.4.4 ‘No, sir.’
- 1.4.5 ‘Or did you ever say to me: “Sir, I shall live dedicated to the Buddha, and the Buddha will perform a superhuman demonstration of psychic power for me”?’
- 1.4.7 ‘No, sir.’
- 1.4.8 ‘So it seems that I did not ask this of you, and you did not require it of me. In that case, you silly man, who are you and what are you rejecting? What do you think, Sunakkhatta? Whether or not there is a demonstration of psychic power, does my teaching lead someone who practices it to the goal of the complete ending of suffering?’
- 1.4.15 ‘It does, sir.’
- 1.4.16 ‘So it seems that whether or not there is a demonstration of psychic power, my teaching leads someone who practices it to the goal of the complete ending of suffering. In that case, what is the point of superhuman demonstrations of psychic power? See how far you have strayed, you silly man!’
- 1.5.1 ‘But sir, the Buddha never describes the origin of the world to me.’
- 1.5.2 ‘But Sunakkhatta, did I ever say to you: “Come, live dedicated to me and I will describe the origin of the world to you”?’
- 1.5.4 ‘No, sir.’
- 1.5.5 ‘Or did you ever say to me: “Sir, I shall live dedicated to the Buddha, and the Buddha will describe the origin of the world to me”?’
- 1.5.7 ‘No, sir.’
- 1.5.8 ‘So it seems that I did not ask this of you, and you did not require it of me. In that case, you silly man, who are you and what are you rejecting? What do you think, Sunakkhatta? Whether or not the origin of the world is described, does my teaching lead someone who practices it to the goal of the complete ending of suffering?’
- 1.5.15 ‘It does, sir.’
- 1.5.16 ‘So it seems that whether or not the origin of the world is described, my teaching leads someone who practices it to the goal of

the complete ending of suffering. In that case, what is the point of describing the origin of the world? See how far you have strayed, you silly man!

In many ways, Sunakkhatta, you have praised me like this in the Vajjian capital: “That Blessed One is perfected, a fully awakened Buddha, accomplished in knowledge and conduct, holy, knower of the world, supreme guide for those who wish to train, teacher of gods and humans, awakened, blessed.” 1.6.1

In many ways you have praised the teaching like this in the Vajjian capital: “The teaching is well explained by the Buddha—apparent in the present life, immediately effective, inviting inspection, relevant, so that sensible people can know it for themselves.” 1.6.4

In many ways you have praised the Saṅgha like this in the Vajjian capital: “The Saṅgha of the Buddha’s disciples is practicing the way that’s good, direct, systematic, and proper. It consists of the four pairs, the eight individuals. This is the Saṅgha of the Buddha’s disciples that is worthy of offerings dedicated to the gods, worthy of hospitality, worthy of a religious donation, worthy of greeting with joined palms, and is the supreme field of merit for the world.” 1.6.7

I declare this to you, Sunakkhatta, I announce this to you! There will be those who say that Sunakkhatta was unable to lead the spiritual life under the ascetic Gotama. That’s why he resigned the training and returned to a lesser life. That’s what they’ll say.’ 1.6.10

Though I spoke to Sunakkhatta like this, he still left this teaching and training, like someone on the highway to hell. 1.6.13

2. On the Aristocrat of Kuru

Bhaggava, this one time I was staying in the land of the Kurus where they have a town named Uttarakā.⁶ Then I robed up in the 1.7.1

6. There are at least eight spellings for this tribe, including *thulu*, *bumu* and *khulu*. Below we meet a member of the ruling clan of the tribe named *korakhattiya*. I propose that *kora* is “of Kuru” by way of secondary derivation; cp. *Koravya* as a regular name for the kings of Kuru. Thus *korakhattiya* is not a personal name, but rather “the aristocrat of Kuru”. The name of the city

morning and, taking my bowl and robe, entered Uttarakā for alms with Sunakkhatta the Licchavi as my second monk. Now at that time a naked ascetic who was an aristocrat of Kuru had taken a vow to behave like a dog. When food is tossed on the ground, he gets down on all fours, eating and devouring it just with his mouth.⁷

1.7.4 Sunakkhatta saw him doing this and thought, ‘That ascetic is a holy man!’⁸

1.7.7 Then, knowing what Sunakkhatta was thinking, I said to him, ‘Don’t you claim to be an ascetic, a follower of the Sakyan, you silly man?’

1.7.9 ‘But why does the Buddha say this to me?’

1.7.11 ‘When you saw that naked ascetic of Kuru, didn’t you think, “That ascetic is a holy man!”?’

1.7.13 ‘Yes, sir. But sir, are you jealous of the perfected ones?’

1.7.15 ‘I’m not jealous of the perfected ones, you silly man. Rather, you should give up this harmful misconception that has arisen in you. Don’t create lasting harm and suffering for yourself!

1.7.18 That naked ascetic the aristocrat of Kuru, who you imagine to be a holy man, will die of flatulence in seven days.⁹ And when he dies, he’ll be reborn in the very lowest rank of titans, named the Kālakañjas.¹⁰ And they’ll throw him in the charnel ground on a clump of vetiver. If you wish, Sunakkhatta, go to the aristocrat of Kuru and ask him whether he knows his own destiny. It’s possible

uttarakā means “northern”, and Kuru is indeed northern. Occam’s razor would urge us not to assume the existence of an otherwise unknown tribe on such a dubious term when it can be explained more parsimoniously as an ancient misspelling of Kuru. The Chinese at DA 15 (T 1, 67a15) has 白土 (“white clay”), which does not seem to clear it up.

7. This practice is further described, along with the “cow vow”, at MN 57.

8. “Holy man” is *sādhurūpo* (cp. Dh 263, AN 6.54:26.1).

9. *Alasaka* is otherwise unknown in early Pali. Sanskrit medical texts describe it as flatulent indigestion. This agrees with the subcommentary’s *ajīraṇena āmarogena* (“indigestion”). | In this sutta, the Buddha is depicted as making specific predictions about the future, whereas normally he does not and probably cannot. Rather, he makes conditional predictions that if such courses are pursued, such results will follow.

10. The terrifying Kālakañjas are mentioned at DN 20:12.5.

that he will answer: “Reverend Sunakkhatta, I know my own destiny. I’ve been reborn in the very lowest rank of titans, named the Kālakañjas.”’

So, Bhaggava, Sunakkhatta went to see the aristocrat of Kuru 1.8.1 and said to him, ‘Reverend aristocrat of Kuru, the ascetic Gotama has declared that you will die of flatulence in seven days. And when you die, you’ll be reborn in the very lowest rank of titans, named the Kālakañjas. And when you die, they’ll throw you in the charnel ground on a clump of vetiver. But by eating just a little food and drinking just a little water, you’ll prove what the ascetic Gotama says to be false.’

Then Sunakkhatta counted up the days until the seventh day, as 1.8.8 happens when you have no faith in the Realized One. But on the seventh day, the naked ascetic who was an aristocrat of Kuru died of flatulence. And when he passed away, he was reborn in the very lowest rank of titans, named the Kālakañjas. And when he passed away, they threw him in the charnel ground on a clump of vetiver.

Sunakkhatta the Licchavi heard about this. So he went to see the 1.9.1 aristocrat of Kuru in the charnel ground on the clump of vetiver. There he struck him with his fist three times, ‘Reverend aristocrat of Kuru, do you know your destiny?’

Then the aristocrat of Kuru got up, rubbing his back with his 1.9.5 hands, and said,¹¹ ‘Reverend Sunakkhatta, I know my own destiny. I’ve been reborn in the very lowest rank of titans, named the Kālakañjas.’ After speaking, he fell flat right there.

Then Sunakkhatta came to me, bowed, and sat down to one side. 1.10.1 I said to him, ‘What do you think, Sunakkhatta? Did the prediction I made about the aristocrat of Kuru turn out to be correct, or not?’

‘It turned out to be correct.’ 1.10.4

11. This whole passage is unprecedented in early Buddhism. If Sunakkhatta was indeed able to revive the dead with three punches, it would explain why he thought so little of the Buddha’s powers. But the ease with which this information is obtained contrasts with the elaborate failures of Pāyāsi (DN 23).

- 1.10.5 ‘What do you think, Sunakkhatta? If that is so, has a superhuman demonstration of psychic power been performed or not?’
- 1.10.7 ‘Clearly, sir, a superhuman demonstration of psychic power has been performed.’
- 1.10.8 ‘Though I performed such a superhuman demonstration of psychic power you say this: “But sir, the Buddha never performs any superhuman demonstrations of psychic power for me.” See how far you have strayed!’ Though I spoke to Sunakkhatta like this, he still left this teaching and training, like someone on the highway to hell.

3. On the Naked Ascetic Kaḷāramattaka

- 1.11.1 This one time, Bhaggava, I was staying near Vesālī, at the Great Wood, in the hall with the peaked roof. Now at that time the naked ascetic Kaḷāramattaka was residing in Vesālī. And in the Vajjian capital he had reached the peak of material possessions and fame.¹² He had undertaken these seven vows.¹³ ‘As long as I live, I will be a naked ascetic, not wearing clothes. As long as I live, I will be celibate, not having sex. As long as I live, I will consume only meat and alcohol, not eating rice and porridge.’¹⁴ And I will not go past the following tree-shrines near Vesālī: the Udena shrine to the east, the Gotamaka to the south, the Seven Maidens to the west, and the Many Sons to the north.’¹⁵ And it was due to undertaking these seven vows that he had reached the peak of material possessions and fame.
- 1.12.1 So, Bhaggava, Sunakkhatta went to see Kaḷāramattaka and asked him a question. But when it stumped him, he displayed annoyance,

12. Spellings for Kaḷāramattaka vary greatly.

13. In these practices we see some examples of the vows or observances (*vata*) that Buddha rejected as “grasping at precepts and observances”

14. A diet of pure meat is still undertaken today by certain delusional would-be gurus.

15. Compare the “vow of restraint in the directions” in the Jain Tattvārthasūtra 7.1.

hate, and bitterness. So Sunakkhatta thought, ‘I’ve offended the holy man, the perfected one, the ascetic.’¹⁶ I mustn’t create lasting harm and suffering for myself!’

Then Sunakkhatta came to me, bowed, and sat down to one side. 1.13.1
I said to him, ‘Don’t you claim to be an ascetic, a follower of the Sakyan, you silly man?’

‘But why does the Buddha say this to me?’ 1.13.3

‘Didn’t you go to see the naked ascetic Kaḷāramaṭṭaka and ask 1.13.5
him a question? But when it stumped him, he displayed annoyance, hate, and bitterness. Then you thought, “I’ve offended the holy man, the perfected one, the ascetic. I mustn’t create lasting harm and suffering for myself!”’

‘Yes, sir. But sir, are you jealous of perfected ones?’ 1.13.11

‘I’m not jealous of the perfected ones, you silly man. Rather, 1.13.13
you should give up this harmful misconception that has arisen in you. Don’t create lasting harm and suffering for yourself!’

That naked ascetic Kaḷāramaṭṭaka, who you imagine to be a true 1.13.16
holy man, will shortly be clothed, living with a partner, eating rice and porridge, having gone past all the shrines near Vesālī. And he will die after losing all his fame.’

And that’s exactly what happened. 1.13.18

Sunakkhatta heard about this. He came to me, bowed, and sat 1.14.1
down to one side. I said to him, ‘What do you think, Sunakkhatta? Did the declaration I made about Kaḷāramaṭṭaka turn out to be correct, or not?’

‘It turned out to be correct.’ 1.14.6

‘What do you think, Sunakkhatta? If that is so, has a superhuman 1.14.7
demonstration of psychic power been performed or not?’

‘Clearly, sir, a superhuman demonstration of psychic power has 1.14.9
been performed.’

‘Though I perform such a superhuman demonstration of psy- 1.14.10
chic power you say this: “But sir, the Buddha never performs any

16. *Āsādimhase* is middle aorist plural. Below Sunakkhatta again refers to himself in plural, but as usual I render with singular.

superhuman demonstrations of psychic power for me.” See how far you have strayed!’ Though I spoke to Sunakkhatta like this, he still left this teaching and training, like someone on the highway to hell.

4. On the Naked Ascetic Pāṭikaputta

1.15.1 This one time, Bhaggava, I was staying right there near Vesālī, at the Great Wood, in the hall with the peaked roof. Now at that time the naked ascetic Pāṭikaputta was residing in Vesālī. And in the Vajjian capital he had reached the peak of material possessions and fame.¹⁷ He was telling a crowd in Vesālī: ‘Both the ascetic Gotama and I speak from knowledge.¹⁸ One who speaks from knowledge ought to display a superhuman demonstration of psychic power to another who speaks from knowledge. If the ascetic Gotama meets me half-way, there we should both perform a superhuman demonstration of psychic power. If he performs one demonstration of psychic power, I’ll perform two. If he performs two, I’ll perform four. If he performs four, I’ll perform eight. However many demonstrations of psychic power the ascetic Gotama performs, I’ll perform double.’

1.16.1 Then Sunakkhatta came to me, bowed, sat down to one side, and told me of all this.

1.16.12 I said to him, ‘Sunakkhatta, the naked ascetic Pāṭikaputta is not capable of meeting me face to face, unless he gives up that statement and that intention, and lets go of that view. If he thinks he can meet me face to face without giving up those things, his head may explode.’

1.17.1 ‘Careful what you say, Blessed One! Careful what you say, Holy One!’

17. The Burmese reading *pāthikaputta* means “son of a traveler”. However the commentary says Pāṭika (or Pāthika) was the name of his father.

18. For *ñāṇavādo* (“one who speaks from knowledge”) see AN 9.38:3.3, AN 10.24:2.1, MN 26:15.7.

‘But why do you say this to me, Sunakkhatta?’ 1.17.2

‘Sir, the Buddha has categorically asserted that Pāṭikaputta is not capable of meeting the Buddha face to face, otherwise his head may explode. But Pāṭikaputta might meet the Buddha face to face in disguise, proving the Buddha wrong.’ 1.17.4

‘Sunakkhatta, would the Realized One make an ambiguous statement?’¹⁹ 1.18.1

‘But sir, did you make that statement after comprehending Pāṭikaputta’s mind with your mind? Or did deities tell you about it?’ 1.18.2

‘Both, Sunakkhatta. For Ajita the Licchavi general has recently passed away and been reborn in the host of the Thirty-Three. He came and told me this, “The naked ascetic Pāṭikaputta is shameless, sir, he is a liar. For he has declared of me in the Vajjian capital: ‘Ajita the Licchavi general has been reborn in the Great Hell.’” 1.18.10

But that is not true—I have been reborn in the host of the Thirty-Three. The naked ascetic Pāṭikaputta is shameless, sir, he is a liar. Pāṭikaputta is not capable of meeting the Buddha face to face, otherwise his head may explode.” 1.18.24

Thus I both made that statement after comprehending Pāṭikaputta’s mind with my mind, and deities told me about it. 1.18.31

So Sunakkhatta, I’ll wander for alms in Vesālī. After the meal, on my return from almsround, I’ll go to Pāṭikaputta’s monastery for the day’s meditation. Now you may tell him, if you so wish.’ 1.18.38

5. On Demonstrations of Psychic Power

Then, Bhaggava, I robed up in the morning and, taking my bowl and robe, entered Vesālī for alms. After the meal, on my return from almsround, I went to Pāṭikaputta’s monastery for the day’s meditation. Then Sunakkhatta rushed into Vesālī to see the very well-known Licchavis and said to them, ‘Sirs, after his almsround, the Buddha has gone to Pāṭikaputta’s monastery for the day’s med- 1.19.1

19. “Ambiguous” is *dvayagāminī*, literally “two-going”.

itation. Come forth, sirs, come forth! There will be a superhuman demonstration of psychic power by the holy ascetics!’ So the very well-known Licchavis thought, ‘It seems there will be a superhuman demonstration of psychic power by the holy ascetics! Let’s go!’

1.19.9 Then he went to see the very well-known well-to-do brahmins, rich householders, and ascetics and brahmins who follow various other religions, and said the same thing. They all said, ‘It seems there will be a superhuman demonstration of psychic power by the holy ascetics! Let’s go!’

1.19.15 Then all those very well-known people went to Pāṭikaputta’s monastery. That assembly was large, Bhaggava; there were many hundreds, many thousands of them.

1.20.1 Pāṭikaputta heard, ‘It seems that very well-known Licchavis, well-to-do brahmins, rich householders, and ascetics and brahmins who follow various other religions have come forth. And the ascetic Gotama is sitting in my monastery for the day’s meditation.’ When he heard that, he became frightened, scared, his hair standing on end. In fear he went to the Pale-Moon Ebony Trunk Monastery of the wanderers.

1.20.6 The assembly heard of this, and instructed a man, ‘Come, my man, go to see Pāṭikaputta at the Pale-Moon Ebony Trunk Monastery and say to him, “Come forth, Reverend Pāṭikaputta! All these very well-known people have come forth, and the ascetic Gotama is sitting in your monastery for the day’s meditation. For you stated this in the assembly at Vesālī: ‘Both the ascetic Gotama and I speak from knowledge. One who speaks from knowledge ought to display a superhuman demonstration of psychic power to another who speaks from knowledge. If the ascetic Gotama meets me half-way, there we should both perform a superhuman demonstration of psychic power. If he performs one demonstration of psychic power, I’ll perform two. If he performs two, I’ll perform four. If he performs four, I’ll perform eight. However many demonstrations of psychic power the ascetic Gotama per-

forms, I'll perform double.' Come forth, Reverend Pāṭikaputta, half-way. The ascetic Gotama has come the first half, and is sitting in your monastery.”

‘Yes, sir,’ replied that man, and delivered the message. 1.21.1

When he had spoken, Pāṭikaputta said: ‘I’m coming, sir, I’m coming!’ But wriggle as he might, he couldn’t get up from his seat. Then that man said to Pāṭikaputta, ‘What’s up, Reverend Pāṭikaputta? Is your bottom stuck to the bench, or is the bench stuck to your bottom? You say “I’m coming, sir, I’m coming!” But wriggle as you might, you can’t get up from your seat.’ And as he was speaking, Pāṭikaputta said: ‘I’m coming, sir, I’m coming!’ But wriggle as he might, he couldn’t get up from his seat. 1.21.10

When that man knew that Pāṭikaputta had lost, he returned to the assembly and said, ‘Pāṭikaputta has lost, sirs. He says “I’m coming, sir, I’m coming!” But wriggle as he might, he can’t get up from his seat.’ When he said this, I said to the assembly, ‘The naked ascetic Pāṭikaputta is not capable of meeting me face to face, unless he gives up that statement and that intention, and lets go of that view. If he thinks he can meet me face to face without giving up those things, his head may explode.’ 1.22.1

The first recitation section is finished.

Then, Bhaggava, a certain Licchavi minister stood up and said to the assembly, ‘Well then, sirs, wait a moment, I’ll go. Hopefully I’ll be able to lead Pāṭikaputta back to the assembly.’ 2.1.1

So that minister went to see Pāṭikaputta and said, ‘Come forth, Reverend Pāṭikaputta! It’s best for you to come forth. All these very well-known people have come forth, and the ascetic Gotama is sitting in your monastery for the day’s meditation. You said you’d meet the ascetic Gotama half-way. The ascetic Gotama has come the first half, and is sitting in your monastery. The ascetic Gotama has told the assembly that you’re not capable of meeting him face to face. Come forth, Pāṭikaputta! When you come forth we’ll make you win and the ascetic Gotama lose.’ 2.1.4

2.2.1 When he had spoken, Pāṭikaputta said: ‘I’m coming, sir, I’m coming!’ But wriggle as he might, he couldn’t get up from his seat. Then the minister said to Pāṭikaputta, ‘What’s up, Reverend Pāṭikaputta? Is your bottom stuck to the bench, or is the bench stuck to your bottom? You say “I’m coming, sir, I’m coming!” But wriggle as you might, you can’t get up from your seat.’ And as he was speaking, Pāṭikaputta said: ‘I’m coming, sir, I’m coming!’ But wriggle as he might, he couldn’t get up from his seat.

2.3.1 When the Licchavi minister knew that Pāṭikaputta had lost, he returned to the assembly and said, ‘Pāṭikaputta has lost, sirs.’ When he said this, I said to the assembly, ‘Pāṭikaputta is not capable of meeting me face to face, otherwise his head may explode. Even if the good Licchavis were to think, “Let’s bind Pāṭikaputta with straps and drag him with a pair of oxen!” But either the straps will break or Pāṭikaputta will.’

2.4.1 Then, Bhaggava, Jāliya, the pupil of the wood-bowl ascetic, stood up and said to the assembly, ‘Well then, sirs, wait a moment, I’ll go. Hopefully I’ll be able to lead Pāṭikaputta back to the assembly.’

2.4.4 So Jāliya went to see Pāṭikaputta and said, ‘Come forth, Reverend Pāṭikaputta! It’s best for you to come forth. All these very well-known people have come forth, and the ascetic Gotama is sitting in your monastery for the day’s meditation. You said you’d meet the ascetic Gotama half-way. The ascetic Gotama has come the first half, and is sitting in your monastery. The ascetic Gotama has told the assembly that you’re not capable of meeting him face to face. And he said that even if the Licchavis try to bind you with straps and drag you with a pair of oxen, either the straps will break or you will. Come forth, Pāṭikaputta! When you come forth we’ll make you win and the ascetic Gotama lose.’

2.5.1 When he had spoken, Pāṭikaputta said: ‘I’m coming, sir, I’m coming!’ But wriggle as he might, he couldn’t get up from his seat. Then Jāliya said to Pāṭikaputta, ‘What’s up, Reverend Pāṭikaputta? Is your bottom stuck to the bench, or is the bench stuck to your bottom? You say “I’m coming, sir, I’m coming!” But wriggle as you

might, you can't get up from your seat.' And as he was speaking, Pāṭikaputta said: 'I'm coming, sir, I'm coming!' But wriggle as he might, he couldn't get up from his seat.

When Jāliya knew that Pāṭikaputta had lost, he said to him, 2.6.1
 'Once upon a time, Reverend Pāṭikaputta, it occurred to a lion, 2.6.3
 king of beasts, "Why don't I make my lair near a certain forest?
 Towards evening I can emerge from my den, yawn, look all around
 the four quarters, roar my lion's roar three times, and set out on
 the hunt. Having slain the very best of the deer herd, and eaten the
 most tender flesh, I could return to my den."

And so that's what he did. 2.6.7

Now, there was an old jackal who had grown fat on the lion's 2.6.10
 leavings, becoming arrogant and strong. He thought, "What does
 the lion, king of beasts, have that I don't? Why don't I also make
 my lair near a certain forest? Towards evening I can emerge from
 my den, yawn, look all around the four quarters, roar my lion's roar
 three times, and set out on the hunt. Having slain the very best of
 the deer herd, and eaten the most tender flesh, I could return to
 my den."

And so that's what he did. But when he tried to roar a lion's roar, 2.7.1
 he only managed to squeal and yelp like a jackal. And what is a
 pathetic jackal's squeal next to the roar of a lion?

In the same way, reverend, while living off the leavings of the 2.7.3
 Holy One, enjoying the leftovers of the Holy One, you presume
 to attack the Realized One, the perfected one, the fully awakened
 Buddha!²⁰ Who are the pathetic Pāṭikaputtas to attack the Realized
 Ones, the perfected ones, the fully awakened Buddhas?

When Jāliya couldn't get Pāṭikaputta to shift from his seat even 2.8.1
 with this simile, he said to him:

'Seeing himself as equal to the lion, 2.8.3
 the jackal presumed "I'm the king of the beasts!"
 But he actually only managed to yelp,

20. *Apadāna* means "what has been left over, leavings, traces".

and what's a sad jackal's squeal to the roar of a lion?

2.8.7 In the same way, reverend, while living off the leavings of the Holy One, you presume to attack him!'

2.9.1 When Jāliya couldn't get Pāṭikaputta to shift from his seat even with this simile, he said to him:

2.9.3 'Following in the steps of another,
seeing himself grown fat on scraps,
until he doesn't even see himself,
the jackal presumes he's a tiger.

2.9.7 But he actually only managed to yelp,
and what's a sad jackal's squeal to the roar of a lion?

2.9.9 In the same way, reverend, while living off the leavings of the Holy One, you presume to attack him!'

2.10.1 When Jāliya couldn't get Pāṭikaputta to shift from his seat even with this simile, he said to him:

2.10.3 'Gorged on frogs, and mice from the barn,
and carcasses tossed in the cemetery,
thriving in the great, empty wood,
the jackal presumed "I'm the king of the beasts!"
But he actually only managed to yelp,
and what's a sad jackal's squeal to the roar of a lion?

2.10.9 In the same way, reverend, while living off the leavings of the Holy One, enjoying the leftovers of the Holy One, you presume to attack the Realized One, the perfected one, the fully awakened Buddha! Who are the pathetic Pāṭikaputtas to attack the Realized Ones, the perfected ones, the fully awakened Buddhas?'

2.11.1 When Jāliya couldn't get Pāṭikaputta to shift from his seat even with this simile, he returned to the assembly and said, 'Pāṭikaputta has lost, sirs. He says "I'm coming, sir, I'm coming!" But wriggle as he might, he can't get up from his seat.'

When he said this, I said to the assembly, ‘The naked ascetic Pāṭikaputta is not capable of meeting me face to face, unless he gives up that statement and that intention, and lets go of that view. If he thinks he can meet me face to face without giving up those things, his head may explode. The good Licchavis might even think, “Let’s bind Pāṭikaputta with straps and drag him with a pair of oxen!” But either the straps will break or Pāṭikaputta will. Pāṭikaputta is not capable of meeting me face to face, otherwise his head may explode.’ 2.12.1

Then, Bhaggava, I educated, encouraged, fired up, and inspired that assembly with a Dhamma talk. I released that assembly from the great bondage, and lifted 84,000 beings from the great swamp. Next I entered upon the fire element, rose into the sky to the height of seven palm trees, and created a flame another seven palm trees high, blazing and smoking. Finally I landed at the Great Wood, in the hall with the peaked roof.²¹ 2.13.1

Then Sunakkhatta came to me, bowed, and sat down to one side. I said to him, ‘What do you think, Sunakkhatta? Did the declaration I made about Pāṭikaputta turn out to be correct, or not?’ 2.13.2

‘It turned out to be correct.’ 2.13.5

‘What do you think, Sunakkhatta? If that is so, has a superhuman demonstration of psychic power been performed or not?’ 2.13.6

‘Clearly, sir, a superhuman demonstration of psychic power has been performed.’ 2.13.8

‘Though I perform such a superhuman demonstration of psychic power you say this: “But sir, the Buddha never performs any superhuman demonstrations of psychic power for me.” See how far you have strayed!’ 2.13.9

Though I spoke to Sunakkhatta like this, he still left this teaching and training, like someone on the highway to hell. 2.13.12

21. This kind of elaborate display is commonly depicted in late texts, but is not otherwise found in early Pali.

6. On Describing the Origin of the World

2.14.1 Bhaggava, I understand the origin of the world. I understand this, and what goes beyond it. Yet since I do not misapprehend that understanding, I have realized extinguishment within myself. Directly knowing this, the Realized One does not come to ruin.²²

2.14.3 There are some ascetics and brahmins who describe the origin of the world in their tradition as created by the God Almighty, by Brahmā. I go up to them and say, ‘Is it really true that this is the venerables’ view?’ And they answer, ‘Yes’. I say to them, ‘But how do you describe in your tradition that the origin of the world came about as created by the God Almighty, by Brahmā?’ But they are stumped by my question, and they even question me in return. So I answer them,

2.14.11 “There comes a time when, reverends, after a very long period has passed, this cosmos contracts. As the cosmos contracts, sentient beings are mostly headed for the realm of streaming radiance. There they are mind-made, feeding on rapture, self-luminous, moving through the sky, steadily glorious, and they remain like that for a very long time.

2.15.1 There comes a time when, after a very long period has passed, this cosmos expands. As it expands an empty mansion of Brahmā appears. Then a certain sentient being—due to the running out of their life-span or merit—passes away from that host of radiant deities and is reborn in that empty mansion of Brahmā. There they are mind-made, feeding on rapture, self-luminous, moving through the sky, steadily glorious, and they remain like that for a very long time.

2.16.1 But after staying there all alone for a long time, they become dissatisfied and anxious, “Oh, if only another being would come to this state of existence.”

22. Compare DN 1:1.36.3. The following passage is largely adapted from the *Brahmajālasutta*.

Then other sentient beings—due to the running out of their life-span or merit—pass away from that host of radiant deities and are reborn in that empty mansion of Brahmā in company with that being. There they too are mind-made, feeding on rapture, self-luminous, moving through the sky, steadily glorious, and they remain like that for a very long time. 2.16.3

Now, the being who was reborn there first thinks, “I am Brahmā, the Great Brahmā, the Vanquisher, the Unvanquished, the Universal Seer, the Wielder of Power, God Almighty, the Maker, the Creator, the First, the Begetter, the Controller, the Father of those who have been born and those yet to be born. And these beings were created by me. Why is that? Because first I thought, ‘Oh, if only another being would come to this state of existence.’ Such was my heart’s wish, and then these creatures came to this state of existence.” 2.17.1

And the beings who were reborn there later also think, “This must be Brahmā, the Great Brahmā, the Vanquisher, the Unvanquished, the Universal Seer, the Wielder of Power, God Almighty, the Maker, the Creator, the First, the Begetter, the Controller, the Father of those who have been born and those yet to be born. And we were created by him. Why is that? Because we see that he was reborn here first, and we arrived later.” 2.17.7

And the being who was reborn first is more long-lived, beautiful, and illustrious than those who arrived later. 2.17.12

It’s possible that one of those beings passes away from that host and is reborn in this state of existence. Having done so, they go forth from the lay life to homelessness. By dint of keen, resolute, committed, and diligent effort, and right application of mind, they experience an immersion of the heart of such a kind that they recollect that past life, but no further. 2.17.14

They say: “He who is Brahmā—the Great Brahmā, the Vanquisher, the Unvanquished, the Universal Seer, the Wielder of Power, God Almighty, the Maker, the Creator, the First, the Begetter, the Controller, the Father of those who have been born and 2.17.17

those yet to be born—by he we were created. He is permanent, everlasting, eternal, imperishable, remaining the same for all eternity. We who were created by that Brahmā are impermanent, not lasting, short-lived, perishable, and have come to this state of existence.” Is this how you describe in your tradition that the origin of the world came about as created by the God Almighty, by Brahmā?’²³

2.17.21 They say, ‘That is what we have heard, Reverend Gotama, just as you say.’²⁴

2.17.23 Bhaggava, I understand the origin of the world. I understand this, and what goes beyond it. Yet since I do not misapprehend that understanding, I have realized extinguishment within myself. Directly knowing this, the Realized One does not come to ruin.

2.18.1 There are some ascetics and brahmins who describe the origin of the world in their tradition as due to those depraved by play. I go up to them and say, ‘Is it really true that this is the venerables’ view?’ And they answer, ‘Yes’. I say to them, ‘But how do you describe in your tradition that the origin of the world came about due to those depraved by play?’ But they are stumped by my question, and they even question me in return. So I answer them,

2.18.9 ‘Reverends, there are gods named “depraved by play”. They spend too much time laughing, playing, and making merry. And in doing so, they lose their mindfulness, and they pass away from that host of gods.’²⁵

2.18.10 It’s possible that one of those beings passes away from that host and is reborn in this state of existence. Having done so, they go forth from the lay life to homelessness. By dint of keen, resolute, committed, and diligent effort, and right application of mind, they

23. This statement is not explicitly phrased as a question, but the Mahāsaṅgīti edition inconsistently punctuates it as one. It makes more sense in context, especially as a response to the initial question: *Kathamvihitakam* (“How do you describe ...”) ... *Evamvihitakam* (“Is this how you describe ...”).

24. This is adopted from DN 1:2.2.1. These philosophers belong with the “partial eternalists”.

25. DN 1:2.7.2.

experience an immersion of the heart of such a kind that they recollect that past life, but no further.

They say, “The gods not depraved by play don’t spend too much time laughing, playing, and making merry. So they don’t lose their mindfulness, and don’t pass away from that host of gods. They are permanent, everlasting, eternal, imperishable, remaining the same for all eternity. But we who were depraved by play spent too much time laughing, playing, and making merry. In doing so, we lost our mindfulness, and passed away from that host of gods. We are impermanent, not lasting, short-lived, perishable, and have come to this state of existence.” Is this how you describe in your tradition that the origin of the world came about due to those depraved by play? 2.18.13

They say, ‘That is what we have heard, Reverend Gotama, just as you say.’ 2.18.19

Bhaggava, I understand the origin of the world. Directly knowing this, the Realized One does not come to ruin. 2.18.21

There are some ascetics and brahmins who describe the origin of the world in their tradition as due to those who are malevolent.²⁶ 2.19.1

I go up to them and say, ‘Is it really true that this is the venerables’ view?’ And they answer, ‘Yes.’ I say to them, ‘But how do you describe in your tradition that the origin of the world came about due to those who are malevolent?’ But they are stumped by my question, and they even question me in return. So I answer them,

‘Reverends, there are gods named “malevolent”. They spend too much time gazing at each other, so they grow angry with each other, and their bodies and minds get tired. They pass away from that host of gods. 2.19.9

It’s possible that one of those beings passes away from that host and is reborn in this state of existence. Having done so, they go forth from the lay life to homelessness. By dint of keen, resolute, committed, and diligent effort, and right application of mind, they 2.19.10

26. DN 1:2.10.2.

experience an immersion of the heart of such a kind that they recollect that past life, but no further.

2.19.13 They say, “The gods who are not malevolent don’t spend too much time gazing at each other, so they don’t grow angry with each other, their bodies and minds don’t get tired, and they don’t pass away from that host of gods. They are permanent, everlasting, eternal, imperishable, remaining the same for all eternity. But we who were malevolent spent too much time gazing at each other, so our minds grew angry with each other, our bodies and minds got tired, and we passed away from that host of gods. We are impermanent, not lasting, short-lived, perishable, and have come to this state of existence.” Is this how you describe in your tradition that the origin of the world came about due to those who are malevolent?’

2.19.19 They say, ‘That is what we have heard, Reverend Gotama, just as you say.’

2.19.21 Bhaggava, I understand the origin of the world. Directly knowing this, the Realized One does not come to ruin.

2.20.1 There are some ascetics and brahmins who describe the origin of the world in their tradition as having arisen by chance. I go up to them and say, ‘Is it really true that this is the venerables’ view?’ And they answer, ‘Yes’. I say to them, ‘But how do you describe in your tradition that the origin of the world came about by chance?’ But they are stumped by my question, and they even question me in return. So I answer them,

2.20.9 ‘Reverends, there are gods named “non-percipient beings”.²⁷ When perception arises they pass away from that host of gods.

2.20.11 It’s possible that one of those beings passes away from that host and is reborn in this state of existence. Having done so, they go forth from the lay life to homelessness. By dint of keen, resolute, committed, and diligent effort, and right application of mind, they experience an immersion of the heart of such a kind that they recollect the arising of perception, but no further.

27. DN 1:2.31.1.

They say, “The self and the cosmos arose by chance. Why is that? Because formerly I didn’t exist. Now, having not existed, I’ve transformed into the state of existence.” Is this how you describe in your tradition that the origin of the world came about by chance? 2.20.14

They say, ‘That is what we have heard, Reverend Gotama, just as you say.’ 2.20.19

I understand this, and what goes beyond it. Yet since I do not misapprehend that understanding, I have realized extinguishment within myself. Directly knowing this, the Realized One does not come to ruin. 2.20.21

Though I state and assert this, certain ascetics and brahmins misrepresent me with the false, hollow, lying, untruthful claim: ‘The ascetic Gotama has a distorted perspective, and so have his monks.’ 2.21.1

He says, “When one enters and remains in the liberation of the beautiful, at that time one only perceives what is ugly.” 2.21.3

But I don’t say that. I say this: ‘When one enters and remains in the liberation of the beautiful, at that time one only perceives what is beautiful.’ 2.21.5

“They are the ones with a distorted perspective, sir, who regard the Buddha and the mendicants in this way. Sir, I am quite confident that the Buddha is capable of teaching me so that I can enter and remain in the liberation on the beautiful.” 2.21.9

“It’s hard for you to enter and remain in the liberation on the beautiful, since you have a different view, creed, and belief, unless you dedicate yourself to practice with the guidance of tradition. Come now, Bhaggava, carefully preserve the confidence that you have in me.” 2.21.11

“If it’s hard for me to enter and remain in the liberation on the beautiful, since I have a different view, creed, and belief, unless I dedicate myself to practice with the guidance of tradition, I shall carefully preserve the confidence that I have in the Buddha.” 2.21.13

That is what the Buddha said. Satisfied, the wanderer of the Bhaggava clan was happy with what the Buddha said. 2.21.15

DN 25

The Lion's Roar at the Monastery of Lady Udumbarikā *Udumbarikasutta*

1. The Story of the Wanderer Nigrodha

- 1.1 SO I HAVE HEARD. At one time the Buddha was staying near Rājagaha, on the Vulture's Peak Mountain.
- 1.3 Now at that time the wanderer Nigrodha was residing in the lady Udumbarikā's monastery for wanderers, together with a large assembly of three thousand wanderers.²⁸ Then the householder Sandhāna left Rājagaha in the middle of the day to see the Buddha.²⁹
- 1.5 Then it occurred to him, "It's the wrong time to see the Buddha, as he's in retreat. And it's the wrong time to see the esteemed

28. The Buddha refers to the events of this sutta at DN 8:23.2, but apart from that Nigrodha ("Banyan") appears to be unknown. A "wanderer" may or may not be Brahmanical, but in DN 8 Nigrodha is called *tapabrahmacārī*, which suggests he was a celibate student of a Brahmanical teacher. | The commentary describes *udumbarikā* ("Fig") as *devī* ("Queen"), while DA 8 says she is a "brahmin lady". She too does not seem to appear elsewhere.

29. Sandhāna ("Conciliation") was recognized as an eminent lay follower at (AN 6.120–139:1.14).

mendicants, as they're in retreat. Why don't I visit the wanderer Nigrodha at the lady Udumbarikā's monastery for wanderers?" So he went to the monastery of the wanderers.

Now at that time, Nigrodha was sitting together with a large assembly of wanderers making an uproar, a dreadful racket. They engaged in all kinds of low talk, such as talk about kings, bandits, and ministers; talk about armies, threats, and wars; talk about food, drink, clothes, and beds; talk about garlands and fragrances; talk about family, vehicles, villages, towns, cities, and countries; talk about women and heroes; street talk and well talk; talk about the departed; motley talk; tales of land and sea; and talk about being reborn in this or that state of existence. 2.1

Nigrodha saw Sandhāna coming off in the distance, and hushed his own assembly: "Be quiet, good sirs, don't make a sound. The householder Sandhāna, a disciple of the ascetic Gotama, is coming. He is included among the white-clothed lay disciples of the ascetic Gotama, who is residing near Rājagaha. Such venerables like the quiet, are educated to be quiet, and praise the quiet. Hopefully if he sees that our assembly is quiet he'll see fit to approach." Then those wanderers fell silent. 3.1

Then Sandhāna went up to the wanderer Nigrodha, and exchanged greetings with him. When the greetings and polite conversation were over, he sat down to one side and said to Nigrodha, "The way the wanderers make an uproar as they sit together and talk about all kinds of low topics is one thing. It's quite different to the way the Buddha frequents remote lodgings in the wilderness and the forest that are quiet and still, far from the madding crowd, remote from human settlements, and fit for retreat." 4.1

When Sandhāna said this, Nigrodha said to him, "Surely, householder, you should know better! With whom does the ascetic Gotama converse? With whom does he engage in discussion? With whom does he achieve lucidity of wisdom? Staying in empty huts has destroyed the ascetic Gotama's wisdom. Not frequenting assemblies, he is unable to hold a discussion. He just lurks 5.1

on the periphery. He's just like a one-eyed cow, circling around and lurking on the periphery.³⁰ Go on, householder! Were the ascetic Gotama to come to this assembly, I'd sink him with just one question! I'd tie him up like a hollow pot!"³¹

6.1 With clairaudience that is purified and superhuman, the Buddha heard this discussion between the householder Sandhāna and the wanderer Nigrodha. Then the Buddha descended from Vulture's Peak Mountain and went to the peacocks' feeding ground on the bank of the Sumāgadhā, where he walked mindfully in the open air.

6.3 Nigrodha saw him, and hushed his own assembly: "Be quiet, good sirs, don't make a sound. The ascetic Gotama is walking mindfully on the bank of the Sumāgadhā. The venerable likes quiet and praises quiet. Hopefully if he sees that our assembly is quiet he'll see fit to approach. If he comes, I'll ask him this question: 'Sir, what teaching do you use to guide your disciples, through which they claim solace in the fundamental purpose of the spiritual life?'" Then those wanderers fell silent.

2. Mortification in Disgust of Sin

7.1 Then the Buddha went up to the wanderer Nigrodha, who said to him, "Let the Blessed One come, sir! Welcome to the Blessed One, sir! It's been a long time since you took the opportunity to come here. Please, sir, sit down, this seat is ready." The Buddha sat on the seat spread out, while Nigrodha took a low seat and sat to one side. The Buddha said to him, "Nigrodha, what were you sitting talking about just now? What conversation was left unfinished?"³²

30. "One-eyed cow" is *gokāṇā*.

31. *Orodheyyāma* normally means "enclose, trap" like ox in a pen (AN 6.60:3.1), but here it is glossed in the commentary as *vinandheyyāma* ("twist around").

32. This discourse highlights the Buddha's method of engaging with people of other religions. He is open-hearted and interested in their views. He prefers

Nigrodha said, “Well, sir, I saw you walking mindfully and said: 7.10
 ‘If the ascetic Gotama comes, I’ll ask him this question: “Sir, what teaching do you use to guide your disciples, through which they claim solace in the fundamental purpose of the spiritual life?”’ This is the conversation that was unfinished when the Buddha arrived.”

“It’s hard for you to understand this, Nigrodha, since you have 7.15
 a different view, creed, and belief, unless you dedicate yourself to practice with the guidance of tradition. Please ask me a question about the higher disgust of sin in your own tradition:³³ ‘How are the conditions for the fervent mortification in disgust of sin completed, and how are they incomplete?’”³⁴

When he said this, those wanderers made an uproar, “Oh, how 7.18
 incredible, how amazing! The ascetic Gotama has such power and might! For he sets aside his own doctrine and invites discussion on the doctrine of others!”

Then Nigrodha, having quieted those wanderers, said to the 8.1
 Buddha, “Sir, we teach fervent mortification in disgust of sin, regarding it as essential and clinging to it. How are the conditions for the fervent mortification in disgust of sin completed, and how are they incomplete?”

“Nigrodha, it’s when a mortifier goes naked, ignoring con- 8.4
 ventions. They lick their hands, and don’t come or wait when called. They don’t consent to food brought to them, or food prepared on their behalf, or an invitation for a meal.³⁵ They don’t receive anything from a pot or bowl; or from someone who keeps sheep, or who has a weapon or a shovel in their home; or where

to build on common ground, but is not afraid to criticize when it is warranted. And his aim is not to win converts, but to help people be free of suffering.

33. “Higher disgust of sin” renders *adhijegucche*. The idea is that people are tainted with corruption, somewhat comparable to the notion of “original sin”, although due to their own actions in the past rather than ancestral legacy. In “disgust” at that sin, they practice forms of fervent mortification (*tapas*) to burn out the corruption.

34. The phrase *katham santā* is unique; it echoes *evam sante* below.

35. See the passage at DN 8:14.3 and notes thereto.

a couple is eating; or where there is a woman who is pregnant, breast-feeding, or who has a man in her home; or where there's a dog waiting or flies buzzing. They accept no fish or meat or liquor or wine, and drink no beer. They go to just one house for alms, taking just one mouthful, or two houses and two mouthfuls, up to seven houses and seven mouthfuls. They feed on one saucer a day, two saucers a day, up to seven saucers a day. They eat once a day, once every second day, up to once a week, and so on, even up to once a fortnight. They live committed to the practice of eating food at set intervals. They eat herbs, millet, wild rice, poor rice, water lettuce, rice bran, scum from boiling rice, sesame flour, grass, or cow dung. They survive on forest roots and fruits, or eating fallen fruit. They wear robes of sunn hemp, mixed hemp, corpse-wrapping cloth, rags, lodh tree bark, antelope hide (whole or in strips), kusa grass, bark, wood-chips, human hair, horse-tail hair, or owls' wings. They tear out their hair and beard, committed to this practice. They constantly stand, refusing seats. They squat, committed to persisting in the squatting position. They lie on a mat of thorns, making a mat of thorns their bed. They make their bed on a plank, or the bare ground. They lie only on one side. They wear dust and dirt. They stay in the open air. They sleep wherever they lay their mat. They eat unnatural things, committed to the practice of eating unnatural foods. They don't drink, committed to the practice of not drinking liquids. They're committed to the practice of immersion in water three times a day, including the evening.

- 8.22 What do you think, Nigrodha? If this is so, is the fervent mortification in disgust of sin complete, or incomplete?"
- 8.24 "Clearly, sir, if that is so the fervent mortification in disgust of sin is complete, not incomplete."
- 8.25 "But even such a completed mortification has many defects, I say."

2.1. Defects

“But how does the Buddha say that even such a completed mortification has many defects?” 9.1

“Firstly, a mortifier undertakes a practice of mortification. 9.2 They’re happy with that, as they’ve got all they wished for.³⁶ This is a defect in that mortifier.

Furthermore, a mortifier undertakes a practice of mortification. 9.5 They glorify themselves and put others down on account of that. This too is a defect in that mortifier.

Furthermore, a mortifier undertakes a practice of mortification. 9.8 They become indulgent and infatuated and fall into negligence on account of that. This too is a defect in that mortifier.

Furthermore, a mortifier undertakes a practice of mortification. 10.1 They generate possessions, honor, and popularity through that mortification. They’re happy with that, as they’ve got all they wished for. This too is a defect in that mortifier.

Furthermore, a mortifier undertakes a practice of mortification. 10.4 They generate possessions, honor, and popularity through that mortification. They glorify themselves and put others down on account of that. This too is a defect in that mortifier.

Furthermore, a mortifier undertakes a practice of mortification. 10.7 They generate possessions, honor, and popularity through that mortification. They become indulgent and infatuated and fall into negligence on account of that. This too is a defect in that mortifier.

Furthermore, a mortifier becomes fussy about food, saying, 10.10 “This is acceptable to me, this is not acceptable to me.’ What is not acceptable they give up in expectation.³⁷ But what is acceptable they eat tied, infatuated, attached, blind to the drawbacks, and not understanding the escape. This too is a defect in that mortifier.

36. The Buddha shifts attention from the external practice to the psychological state that accompanies it.

37. “In expectation” (*sāpekkho*): when they give up something they cannot eat, they expect to be given more suitable food.

- 10.15 Furthermore, a mortifier undertakes a practice of mortification out of longing for possessions, honor, and popularity, thinking, ‘Kings, royal ministers, aristocrats, brahmins, householders, and sectarians will honor me!’ This too is a defect in that mortifier.
- 11.1 Furthermore, a mortifier rebukes a certain ascetic or brahmin, ‘But what is this one doing, living in abundance! According to this ascetic’s doctrine, everything—plants propagated from roots, stems, cuttings, or joints; and those from regular seeds as the fifth—is crunched together like the thunder of a tooth-hammer!’ This too is a defect in that mortifier.
- 11.5 Furthermore, a mortifier sees a certain ascetic or brahmin being honored, respected, esteemed, and venerated among good families. They think, ‘This one, who lives in abundance, is honored, respected, esteemed, and venerated among good families. But I, a fervent mortifier who lives rough, am not honored, respected, esteemed, and venerated among good families.’ Thus they give rise to jealousy and stinginess regarding families. This too is a defect in that mortifier.
- 11.10 Furthermore, a mortifier sits meditation only when people can see them. This too is a defect in that mortifier.
- 11.12 Furthermore, a mortifier sneaks about among families, thinking,³⁸ ‘This is part of my mortification; this is part of my mortification.’ This too is a defect in that mortifier.
- 11.15 Furthermore, a mortifier sometimes behaves in an underhand manner. When asked whether something is acceptable to them, they say it is, even though it isn’t. Or they say it isn’t, even though it is. Thus they tell a deliberate lie. This too is a defect in that mortifier.
- 12.1 Furthermore, a mortifier disagrees with the way that the Realized One or their disciple teaches Dhamma, even when they make a valid point. This too is a defect in that mortifier.

38. “Sneaks” is *attānaṃ adassayamāno*, literally, “not showing himself”. They like to hang about with lay folk, but hide the fact that they do so.

Furthermore, a mortifier is irritable and hostile ... offensive and 12.3
 contemptuous ... jealous and stingy ... devious and deceitful ...
 obstinate and vain ... they have corrupt wishes, falling under the
 sway of corrupt wishes ... they have wrong view, being attached to
 an extremist view ... they're attached to their own views, holding
 them tight, and refusing to let go.³⁹ This too is a defect in that
 mortifier.

What do you think, Nigrodha? Are such mortifications defective 12.15
 or not?"

"Clearly, sir, they're defective. It's possible that a mortifier might 12.17
 have all of these defects, let alone one or other of them."

2.2. On Reaching the Shoots

"Firstly, Nigrodha, a mortifier undertakes a practice of mortification. 13.1
 But they're not happy with that, as they still haven't got all they
 wished for. So they're pure on that point.

Furthermore, a mortifier undertakes a practice of mortification. 13.4
 They don't glorify themselves or put others down on account of
 that. So they're pure on that point.

They don't become indulgent ... 13.6

Furthermore, a mortifier undertakes a practice of mortification. 13.8
 They generate possessions, honor, and popularity through that
 mortification. They're not happy with that, as they still haven't got
 all they wished for ...

They don't glorify themselves and put others down on account 13.10
 of possessions, honor, and popularity ...

They don't become indulgent because of it ... So they're pure 13.12
 on that point.

Furthermore, a mortifier doesn't become fussy about food, say- 13.14
 ing, 'This is acceptable to me, this is not acceptable to me.' What

39. As here, this item typically follows "wrong view". At AN 10.78:1.9 it is said to be a bad quality of Jain ascetics. Thus being "attached to one's own views" refers both to the subjective clinging as well as the objective incorrectness of the views.

is not acceptable they give up without expectation. But what is acceptable they eat without being tied, infatuated, attached, seeing the drawbacks, and understanding the escape. So they're pure on that point.

13.19 Furthermore, a mortifier doesn't undertake a practice of mortification out of longing for possessions, honor, and popularity ... 'Kings, royal ministers, aristocrats, brahmins, householders, and sectarians will honor me!' So they're pure on that point.

13.22 Furthermore, a mortifier doesn't rebuke a certain ascetic or brahmin, 'But what is this one doing, living in abundance! According to this ascetic's doctrine, everything—plants propagated from roots, stems, cuttings, or joints; and those from regular seeds as the fifth—is crunched together like the thunder of a tooth-hammer!' So they're pure on that point.

14.1 Furthermore, a mortifier sees a certain ascetic or brahmin being honored, respected, esteemed, and venerated among good families. It never occurs to them, 'This one, who lives in abundance, is honored, respected, esteemed, and venerated among good families. But I, a fervent mortifier who lives rough, am not honored, respected, esteemed, and venerated among good families.' Thus they don't give rise to jealousy and stinginess regarding families. So they're pure on that point.

14.6 Furthermore, a mortifier doesn't sit meditation only when people can see them. So they're pure on that point.

14.8 Furthermore, a mortifier doesn't sneak about among families, thinking, 'This is part of my mortification; this is part of my mortification.' So they're pure on that point.

14.11 Furthermore, a mortifier never behaves in an underhand manner. When asked whether something is acceptable to them, they say it isn't when it isn't. Or they say it is when it is. Thus they don't tell a deliberate lie. So they're pure on that point.

15.1 Furthermore, a mortifier agrees with the way that the Realized One or their disciple teaches Dhamma when they make a valid point. So they're pure on that point.

Furthermore, a mortifier is not irritable and hostile ... offensive 15.3
and contemptuous ... jealous and stingy ... devious and deceitful
... obstinate and vain ... they don't have corrupt wishes ... and
wrong view ... they're not attached to their own views, holding
them tight, and refusing to let go. So they're pure on that point.

What do you think, Nigrodha? If this is so, is the fervent mor- 15.14
tification in disgust of sin purified or not?"

"Clearly, sir, it is purified. It has reached the peak and the pith." 15.16

"No, Nigrodha, at this point the fervent mortification in disgust 15.17
of sin has not yet reached the peak and the pith. Rather, it has only
reached the shoots."

2.3. On Reaching the Bark

"But at what point, sir, does the fervent mortification in disgust of 16.1
sin reach the peak and the pith? Please help me reach the peak and
the pith!"

"Nigrodha, take a mortifier who is restrained in the fourfold 16.3
constraint.⁴⁰ And how is a mortifier restrained in the fourfold
constraint? It's when a mortifier doesn't kill living creatures, doesn't
get others to kill, and doesn't approve of killing.⁴¹ They don't steal,
get others to steal, or approve of stealing. They don't lie, get others
to lie, or approve of lying. They don't expect rewards from their
practice, they don't lead others to expect rewards, and they don't

40. A "fourfold restraint" (*cātuyāma*, or *cāujjāma* in Jain Ardhmagadhi) is attributed to Jain founder Pārśva in Isibhāsiyāim 31, where it is an abbreviated list: "from refraining from killing to refraining from possessions" (*pāṇātivāta-veramaṇeṇaṃ jāvā pariggaha-veramaṇeṇaṃ*); the missing items are not stealing (*asteya*) and truth (*satya*). The Jain text Uttarādhyayanasūtra 23 shows that Mahāvira added nakedness to make five. Five are also found in Yogasūtra 2.30 and the Jain Tattvārthasūtra 7: non-harming (*ahimsā*), truth (*satya*), no stealing (*asteya*), celibacy (*brahmacarya*), and non-possessiveness (*aparigrahā*). | A different "fourfold restraint" is said to be a Jain practice at DN 2:29.2.

41. This extends the basic precept. The same analysis is applied to the "ten ways of performing deeds" at AN 3.163. | The distinction between one's own action and another's action is noted at Isibhāsiyāim 31.42, although the wording and sense are different.

approve of expecting rewards.⁴² That's how a mortifier is restrained in the fourfold constraint.

16.10 When a mortifier is restrained in the fourfold constraint, that is their mortification. They step forward, not falling back. They frequent a secluded lodging—a wilderness, the root of a tree, a hill, a ravine, a mountain cave, a charnel ground, a forest, the open air, a heap of straw. After the meal, they return from almsround, sit down cross-legged, set their body straight, and establish mindfulness in front of them. Giving up covetousness for the world, they meditate with a heart rid of covetousness, cleansing the mind of covetousness. Giving up ill will and malevolence, they meditate with a mind rid of ill will, full of compassion for all living beings, cleansing the mind of ill will. Giving up dullness and drowsiness, they meditate with a mind rid of dullness and drowsiness, perceiving light, mindful and aware, cleansing the mind of dullness and drowsiness. Giving up restlessness and remorse, they meditate without restlessness, their mind peaceful inside, cleansing the mind of restlessness and remorse. Giving up doubt, they meditate having gone beyond doubt, not undecided about skillful qualities, cleansing the mind of doubt.

17.1 They give up these five hindrances, corruptions of the heart that weaken wisdom. Then they meditate spreading a heart full of love to one direction, and to the second, and to the third, and to the fourth. In the same way above, below, across, everywhere, all around, they spread a heart full of love to the whole world—abundant, expansive, limitless, free of enmity and ill will. They meditate spreading a heart full of compassion ... They meditate spreading a heart full of rejoicing ... They meditate spreading a heart full of equanimity to one direction, and to the second, and to

42. *Bhāvitamāsīṣati* is unique. In this and similar contexts, the Pali tradition says *bhāvita* (“reward”, normally “developed”) is the “five sense pleasures” as they see it (*bhāvitam nāma tesam saññāya pañca kāmagaṇā*; cp. MN 56 commentary: *ettha ca bhāvitanti pañcakāmagaṇā*), explaining that this is a usage of the sectarians (Saddanīti ch. 4: *titthiyasamaye pana bhāvitoti kāmagaṇo vuccati*).

the third, and to the fourth. In the same way above, below, across, everywhere, all around, they spread a heart full of equanimity to the whole world—abundant, expansive, limitless, free of enmity and ill will.

What do you think, Nigrodha? If this is so, is the fervent mortification in disgust of sin purified or not? 17.6

“Clearly, sir, it is purified. It has reached the peak and the pith.” 17.8

“No, Nigrodha, at this point the fervent mortification in disgust of sin has not yet reached the peak and the pith. Rather, it has only reached the bark.” 17.9

2.4. On Reaching the Softwood

“But at what point, sir, does the fervent mortification in disgust of sin reach the peak and the pith? Please help me reach the peak and the pith!” 18.1

“Nigrodha, take a mortifier who is restrained in the fourfold constraint. They give up these five hindrances, corruptions of the heart that weaken wisdom. Then they meditate spreading a heart full of love ... compassion ... rejoicing ... equanimity. 18.3

They recollect many kinds of past lives, that is, one, two, three, four, five, ten, twenty, thirty, forty, fifty, a hundred, a thousand, a hundred thousand rebirths; many eons of the world contracting, many eons of the world expanding, many eons of the world contracting and expanding. They remember: ‘There, I was named this, my clan was that, I looked like this, and that was my food. This was how I felt pleasure and pain, and that was how my life ended. When I passed away from that place I was reborn somewhere else. There, too, I was named this, my clan was that, I looked like this, and that was my food. This was how I felt pleasure and pain, and that was how my life ended. When I passed away from that place I was reborn here.’ And so they recollect their many kinds of past lives, with features and details. 18.13

What do you think, Nigrodha? If this is so, is the fervent mortification in disgust of sin purified or not? 18.14

- 18.16 “Clearly, sir, it is purified. It has reached the peak and the pith.”
- 18.17 “No, Nigrodha, at this point the fervent mortification in disgust of sin has not yet reached the peak and the pith. Rather, it has only reached the softwood.”

3. On Reaching the Heartwood

- 19.1 “But at what point, sir, does the fervent mortification in disgust of sin reach the peak and the pith? Please help me reach the peak and the pith!”
- 19.3 “Nigrodha, take a mortifier who is restrained in the fourfold constraint. They give up these five hindrances, corruptions of the heart that weaken wisdom. Then they meditate spreading a heart full of love ... equanimity ... They recollect many kinds of past lives, with features and details.
- 19.12 With clairvoyance that is purified and superhuman, they see sentient beings passing away and being reborn—inferior and superior, beautiful and ugly, in a good place or a bad place. They understand how sentient beings are reborn according to their deeds: ‘These dear beings did bad things by way of body, speech, and mind. They spoke ill of the noble ones; they had wrong view; and they chose to act out of that wrong view. When their body breaks up, after death, they’re reborn in a place of loss, a bad place, the underworld, hell. These dear beings, however, did good things by way of body, speech, and mind. They never spoke ill of the noble ones; they had right view; and they chose to act out of that right view. When their body breaks up, after death, they’re reborn in a good place, a heavenly realm.’ And so, with clairvoyance that is purified and superhuman, they see sentient beings passing away and being reborn—inferior and superior, beautiful and ugly, in a good place or a bad place. They understand how sentient beings are reborn according to their deeds.
- 19.13 What do you think, Nigrodha? If this is so, is the fervent mortification in disgust of sin purified or not?”

“Clearly, sir, it is purified. It has reached the peak and the pith.” 19.15

“Nigrodha, at this point the fervent mortification in disgust 19.16
of sin has reached the peak and the pith. Nigrodha, remember
you said this to me: ‘Sir, what teaching do you use to guide your
disciples, through which they claim solace in the fundamental
purpose of the spiritual life?’ Well, there is something better and
finer than this. That’s what I use to guide my disciples, through
which they claim solace in the fundamental purpose of the spiritual
life.”

When he said this, those wanderers made an uproar, “In that 19.20
case, we’re lost, and so is our tradition! We don’t know anything
better or finer than that!”

4. Nigrodha Feels Depressed

Then the householder Sandhāna realized, “Obviously, now these 20.1
wanderers want to listen to what the Buddha says. They’re actively
listening and trying to understand!”

So he said to the wanderer Nigrodha, “Honorable Nigrodha, 20.3
remember you said this to me: ‘Surely, householder, you should
know better! With whom does the ascetic Gotama converse? With
whom does he engage in discussion? With whom does he achieve
lucidity of wisdom? Staying in empty huts has destroyed the ascetic
Gotama’s wisdom. Not frequenting assemblies, he is unable to hold
a discussion. He just lurks on the periphery. He’s just like a one-
eyed cow, circling around and lurking on the periphery. Please,
householder, let the ascetic Gotama come to this assembly. I’ll
sink him with just one question! I’ll roll him over and wrap him
up like a hollow pot!’ Now the Blessed One, perfected and fully
awakened, has arrived here. Why don’t you send him out of the
assembly to the periphery like a one-eyed cow? Why don’t you
sink him with just one question? Why don’t you roll him over and
wrap him up like a hollow pot?” When he said this, Nigrodha sat

silent, dismayed, shoulders drooping, downcast, depressed, with nothing to say.

21.1 Knowing this, the Buddha said to him, “Is it really true, Nigrodha—are those your words?”

21.3 “It’s true, sir, those are my words. It was foolish, stupid, and unskillful of me.”

21.4 “What do you think, Nigrodha? Have you heard that wanderers of the past who were elderly and senior, the teachers of teachers, said that when the perfected ones, the fully awakened Buddhas of the past came together, they made an uproar, a dreadful racket as they sat and talked about all kinds of low topics, like you do in your tradition these days? Or did they say that the Buddhas frequented remote lodgings in the wilderness and the forest that are quiet and still, far from the madding crowd, remote from human settlements, and fit for retreat, like I do these days?”

21.10 “I have heard that wanderers of the past who were elderly and senior, said that when the perfected ones, the fully awakened Buddhas of the past came together, they didn’t make an uproar, like I do in my tradition these days. They said that the Buddhas of the past frequented remote lodgings in the wilderness, like the Buddha does these days.”

21.15 “Nigrodha, you are a sensible and mature man. Did it not occur to you: “The Blessed One is awakened, tamed, serene, crossed over, and extinguished. And he teaches Dhamma for awakening, taming, serenity, crossing over, and extinguishment’?”

5. The Culmination of the Spiritual Path

22.1 Nigrodha said, “I have made a mistake, sir. It was foolish, stupid, and unskillful of me to speak in that way. Please, sir, accept my mistake for what it is, so I will restrain myself in future.”

22.4 “Indeed, Nigrodha, you made a mistake. It was foolish, stupid, and unskillful of you to speak in that way. But since you have recognized your mistake for what it is, and have dealt with it properly,

I accept it. For it is growth in the training of the Noble One to recognize a mistake for what it is, deal with it properly, and commit to restraint in the future. Nigrodha, this is what I say:

Let a sensible person come—neither devious nor deceitful, a person of integrity. I teach and instruct them. By practicing as instructed they will realize the supreme end of the spiritual path in this very life, in seven years. They will live having achieved with their own insight the goal for which gentlemen rightly go forth from the lay life to homelessness. Let alone seven years. Let a sensible person come—neither devious nor deceitful, a person of integrity. I teach and instruct them. By practicing as instructed they will realize the supreme end of the spiritual path in this very life, in six years ... five years ... four years ... three years ... two years ... one year ... seven months ... six months ... five months ... four months ... three months ... two months ... one month ... a fortnight. Let alone a fortnight. Let a sensible person come—neither devious nor deceitful, a person of integrity. I teach and instruct them. By practicing as instructed they will realize the supreme end of the spiritual path in this very life, in seven days.

6. The Wanderers Feel Depressed

Nigrodha, you might think, ‘The ascetic Gotama speaks like this because he wants pupils.’ But you should not see it like this. Let your teacher remain your teacher.⁴³

You might think, ‘The ascetic Gotama speaks like this because he wants us to give up our recitation.’ But you should not see it like this. Let your recitation remain as it is.

You might think, ‘The ascetic Gotama speaks like this because he wants us to give up our livelihood.’ But you should not see it like this. Let your livelihood remain as it is.

You might think, ‘The ascetic Gotama speaks like this because he wants us to start doing things that are unskillful and considered

43. This passage sets a powerful template for sincere engagement.

unskillful in our tradition.’ But you should not see it like this. Let those things that are unskillful and considered unskillful in your tradition remain as they are.

23.17 You might think, ‘The ascetic Gotama speaks like this because he wants us to stop doing things that are skillful and considered skillful in our tradition.’ But you should not see it like this. Let those things that are skillful and considered skillful in your tradition remain as they are.

23.21 I do not speak for any of these reasons. Nigrodha, there are things that are unskillful, corrupting, leading to future lives, hurtful, resulting in suffering and future rebirth, old age, and death. I teach Dhamma so that those things may be given up. When you practice accordingly, corrupting qualities will be given up in you and cleansing qualities will grow. You’ll enter and remain in the fullness and abundance of wisdom, having realized it with your own insight in this very life.”

24.1 When this was said, those wanderers sat silent, dismayed, shoulders drooping, downcast, depressed, with nothing to say, as if their minds were possessed by Māra. Then the Buddha thought,⁴⁴ “All these foolish people have been touched by the Wicked One! For not even a single one thinks, ‘Come, let us lead the spiritual life under the ascetic Gotama for the sake of enlightenment—for what do seven days matter?’”

24.6 Then the Buddha, having roared his lion’s roar in the lady Udumbarikā’s monastery for wanderers, rose into the air and landed on Vulture’s Peak. Meanwhile, the householder Sandhāna went right back to Rājagaha.

44. This whole ending sequence is unique.

DN 26

The Wheel-Turning Monarch

Cakkavattisutta

1. Taking Refuge in Oneself

SO I HAVE HEARD. At one time the Buddha was staying in the 1.1
land of the Magadhans at Mātulā.⁴⁵ There the Buddha addressed
the mendicants, “Mendicants!”

“Venerable sir,” they replied. The Buddha said this: 1.5

“Mendicants, live as your own island, your own refuge, with no 1.7
other refuge. Let the teaching be your island and your refuge, with
no other refuge.⁴⁶ And how does a mendicant do this? They meditate
observing an aspect of the body—keen, aware, and mindful, rid
of covetousness and displeasure for the world. They meditate observing
an aspect of feelings ... mind ... principles—keen, aware,
and mindful, rid of covetousness and displeasure for the world.
That’s how a mendicant lives as their own island, their own refuge,
with no other refuge. That’s how they let the teaching be their
island and their refuge, with no other refuge.

45. *Mātulā* means “maternal uncle”. This Magadhan village is mentioned only here.

46. As at DN 16:2.26.1.

- 1.14 You should roam inside your own territory, the domain of your fathers.⁴⁷ If you roam inside your own territory, the domain of your fathers, Māra won't catch you or get hold of you. It is due to undertaking skillful qualities that merit grows.⁴⁸

2. King Daḷhanemi

- 2.1 Once upon a time, mendicants, there was a king named Daḷhanemi who was a wheel-turning monarch, a just and principled king. His dominion extended to all four sides, he achieved stability in the country, and he possessed the seven treasures.⁴⁹ He had the following seven treasures: the wheel, the elephant, the horse, the jewel, the woman, the treasurer, and the counselor as the seventh treasure. He had over a thousand sons who were valiant and heroic, crushing the armies of his enemies. After conquering this land girt by sea, he reigned by principle, without rod or sword.
- 3.1 Then, after many years, many hundred years, many thousand years had passed, King Daḷhanemi addressed one of his men, 'My good man, when you see that the heavenly wheel-treasure has receded back from its place, please tell me.'⁵⁰
- 3.3 'Yes, Your Majesty,' replied that man.
- 3.4 After many thousand years had passed, that man saw that the heavenly wheel-treasure had receded back from its place. So he went to King Daḷhanemi and said, 'Please sire, you should know that your heavenly wheel-treasure has receded back from its place.'

47. Two parables on mindfulness expand this idea (SN 47.6, SN 46.7).

48. *Evamidam* indicates entailment, as at SN 56.21:1.3, MN 73:13.2, DN 16:4.2.4.

49. We have heard the story of the wheel-turning monarch Mahāsudassana in DN 17. Daḷhanemi appears only here. His name means "Strong-rim", such being one of the characteristics of the Wheel. His story of renunciation shares much in common with that of Maghadeva (MN 83).

50. "Receded back" (*osakkitaṃ*): like a woman shrinking away from a man's unwanted advances (DN 12:16.12).

So the king summoned the crown prince and said, ‘Dear prince, 3.6
my heavenly wheel-treasure has receded back from its place. I’ve
heard that when this happens to a wheel-turning monarch, he does
not have long to live. I have enjoyed human pleasures. Now it is
time for me to seek heavenly pleasures.⁵¹ Come, dear prince, rule
this land surrounded by ocean! I shall shave off my hair and beard,
dress in ocher robes, and go forth from the lay life to homelessness.’

And so, after carefully instructing the crown prince in kingship, 3.13
King Daḷhanemi shaved off his hair and beard, dressed in ocher
robes, and went forth from the lay life to homelessness.⁵² Seven
days later the heavenly wheel-treasure vanished.

Then a certain man approached the newly anointed aristocrat 4.1
king and said, ‘Please sire, you should know that the heavenly wheel-
treasure has vanished.’ At that the king was unhappy and experi-
enced unhappiness. He went to the royal sage and said, ‘Please sire,
you should know that the heavenly wheel-treasure has vanished.’

When he said this, the royal sage said to him, ‘Don’t be unhappy 4.6
at the vanishing of the wheel-treasure. My dear, the wheel-treasure
is not inherited from your father.⁵³ Come now, my dear, proceed
in the noble duty of a wheel-turning monarch.⁵⁴ If you do so, it’s
possible that—on a fifteenth day sabbath, having bathed your head
and gone upstairs in the royal longhouse to observe the sabbath—

51. The same point of view is expressed at Bi Pc 21:1.4, where sex workers teased nuns, suggesting they enjoy themselves while young and ordain when old. The Buddhist position is that Dhamma can be practiced at any age.

52. The signs of the renunciate predate Buddhism.

53. “Inherited from your father” (*pettikam dāyajjam*) calls back to the four *satipaṭṭhānas* that for a mendicant are “the domain of your fathers” (*pettike visaye*). In both cases they are to be earned, not conferred by lineage.

54. “The noble duty of a wheel-turning monarch” (*ariye cakkavattivatte*; this is locative singular). *Ariya* (“noble”) qualifies “duty” (*vatta*), as it does in the title below, *cakkavattiariyavatta*, rather than “monarch”. Normally *ariya* is reserved for those who have attained the Buddhist path, but here we might have a rare use of *ariya* in reference to Indo-Aryan (Vedic) culture. Compare the use of *ariyaka* for speakers of Indo-Aryan languages at Bu Pj 1:8.4.10. However, the commentary says it simply means “flawless” (*niddoso*).

the heavenly wheel-treasure will appear to you, with a thousand spokes, with rim and hub, complete in every detail.’

2.1. The Noble Duty of a Wheel-Turning Monarch

- 5.1 ‘But sire, what is the noble duty of a wheel-turning monarch?’
- 5.2 ‘Well then, my dear, relying only on principle—honoring, respecting, and venerating principle, having principle as your flag, banner, and authority—provide just protection and security for your court, troops, aristocrats, vassals, brahmins and householders, people of town and country, ascetics and brahmins, beasts and birds.⁵⁵ Do not let injustice prevail in the realm.⁵⁶ Provide money to the penniless in the realm.⁵⁷
- 5.5 And there are ascetics and brahmins in the realm who avoid intoxication and negligence, are settled in patience and gentleness, and who tame, calm, and extinguish themselves. From time to time you should go up to them and ask and learn:⁵⁸ “Sirs, what is skillful? What is unskillful? What is blameworthy? What is blameless? What should be cultivated? What should not be cultivated? Doing what leads to my lasting harm and suffering? Doing what leads to my lasting welfare and happiness?” Having heard them, you should reject what is unskillful and undertake and follow what is skillful.
- 5.8 This is the noble duty of a wheel-turning monarch.’

55. *Samvidahassu* is second middle imperative.

56. *Pavattittha* is aorist middle. (*A*)*dhammakāra* (“(in)justice”) doesn’t seem to occur elsewhere in early Pali. It is found in Ja 513 and Ja 498, both times in the context of just rule.

57. “Provide” (*anuppadeṭi*) is used elsewhere in the sense of paying back a loan (AN 3.20:3.5), serving honored guests (SN 7.2:2.6), paying wages (DN 31:32.2), or a king supplying provisions for essential workers to do their job (DN 5:11.8.). It is thus more about fulfilling a moral obligation of fairness than offering charity.

58. Where the phrase “from time to time go to them” (*te kālena kālaṃ upasaṅkamitvā*) occurs elsewhere in the suttas, it is always followed by “ask and question” (*paripucchati paripaṇḥati*). Here, however, the second verb is “you should learn” (*pariggaṇḥeyyāsi*).

2.2. The Wheel-Treasure Appears

‘Yes, Your Majesty,’ replied the new king to the royal sage. And he 5.10
proceeded in the noble duty of a wheel-turning monarch.

While he was proceeding in that duty, on a fifteenth day sabbath, 5.11
he had bathed his head and gone upstairs in the royal longhouse to
observe the sabbath. And the heavenly wheel-treasure appeared to
him, with a thousand spokes, with rim and hub, complete in every
detail. Seeing this, the king thought, ‘I have heard that when the
heavenly wheel-treasure appears to a king in this way, he becomes
a wheel-turning monarch. Am I then a wheel-turning monarch?’

Then the anointed king, rising from his seat and arranging his 6.1
robe over one shoulder, took a ceremonial vase in his left hand and
besprinkled the wheel-treasure with his right hand, saying, ‘Roll
forth, O wheel-treasure! Triumph, O wheel-treasure!’

Then the wheel-treasure rolled towards the east. And the king 6.3
followed it together with his army of four divisions. In whatever
place the wheel-treasure stood still, there the king came to stay
together with his army. And any opposing rulers of the eastern
quarter came to the wheel-turning monarch and said, ‘Come, great
king! Welcome, great king! We are yours, great king, instruct us.’
The wheel-turning monarch said, ‘Do not kill living creatures. Do
not steal. Do not commit sexual misconduct. Do not lie. Do not
drink alcohol. Maintain the current level of taxation.’ And so the
opposing rulers of the eastern quarter became his vassals.

Then the wheel-treasure, having plunged into the eastern ocean 7.1
and emerged again, rolled towards the south. ... Having plunged
into the southern ocean and emerged again, it rolled towards the
west. ...

Having plunged into the western ocean and emerged again, it 7.9
rolled towards the north, followed by the king together with his
army of four divisions. In whatever place the wheel-treasure stood
still, there the king came to stay together with his army. And any
opposing rulers of the northern quarter came to the wheel-turning
monarch and said, ‘Come, great king! Welcome, great king! We

are yours, great king, instruct us.’ The wheel-turning monarch said, ‘Do not kill living creatures. Do not steal. Do not commit sexual misconduct. Do not lie. Do not drink alcohol. Maintain the current level of taxation.’ And so the rulers of the northern quarter became his vassals.

- 7.16 And then the wheel-treasure, having triumphed over this land surrounded by ocean, returned to the royal capital. There it stood still by the gate to the royal compound at the High Court as if fixed to an axle, illuminating the royal compound.

3. On Subsequent Wheel-Turning Monarchs

- 8.1 And for a second time, and a third, a fourth, a fifth, a sixth, and a seventh time, a wheel-turning monarch was established in exactly the same way. And after many years the seventh wheel-turning monarch went forth, handing the realm over to the crown prince.
- 8.17 Seven days later the heavenly wheel-treasure vanished.
- 9.1 Then a certain man approached the newly anointed aristocrat king and said, ‘Please sire, you should know that the heavenly wheel-treasure has vanished.’ At that the king was unhappy and experienced unhappiness. But he didn’t go to the royal sage and ask about the noble duty of a wheel-turning monarch. He just governed the country according to his own ideas.⁵⁹ So governed, the country’s people did not prosper like before, as they had when former kings proceeded in the noble duty of a wheel-turning monarch.⁶⁰
- 9.7 Then the ministers and counselors, the treasury officials, military officers, guardsmen, and professional advisers gathered and said to the king,⁶¹ ‘Sire, when governed according to your own

59. “Own ideas” is *sa-mata*.

60. *Pabbanti* is unusual and probably unique in early Pali. It is related to Sanskrit *parvati* (“fill”) and is explained by the commentary as *vaḍḍhanti* (“grow, prosper”). | I assume *janapadā* (“countries”) is a misspelling of *jānapadā* (“people of the country”), as *janapada* is otherwise in singular.

61. “Military officers” (*anikaṭṭhā*) would have been standing officers in the army. According to both the commentary here and Monier-Williams’ Sanskrit

ideas, the country's people do not prosper like before, as they did when former kings proceeded in the noble duty of a wheel-turning monarch. In your realm are found ministers and counselors, treasury officials, military officers, guardsmen, and professional advisers—both ourselves and others—who remember the noble duty of a wheel-turning monarch. Please, Your Majesty, ask us about the noble duty of a wheel-turning monarch. We will answer you.'

4. On the Period of Decline

So the anointed king asked the assembled ministers and counselors, 10.1
treasury officials, military officers, guardsmen, and professional advisers about the noble duty of a wheel-turning monarch. And they answered him. After listening to them, he provided just protection and security. But he did not provide money to the penniless in the realm.⁶² And so poverty grew widespread.

When poverty was widespread, a certain person stole from others, 10.5
with the intention to commit theft.⁶³ They arrested him and presented him to the king, saying, 'Your Majesty, this person stole from others with the intention to commit theft.'

The king said to that person, 'Is it really true, mister, that you 10.9
stole from others with the intention to commit theft?'⁶⁴

'It's true, sire.' 10.11

'What was the reason?' 10.12

'Sire, I can't survive.' 10.13

So the king provided some money to that person, saying, 'With 10.14
this money, mister, keep yourself alive, and provide for your mother

Dictionary (*anikastha*), it includes elephant officers, who would have stood at the head of the army. | "Professional advisers" (*mantassājīvino*) is explained by the commentary as those who make a living from giving wise advice.

62. Ensuring citizens have enough to live on is not merely a matter of kindness and common decency, but is crucial to unsure stability and national unity.

63. The origins of theft are told at DN 27:19.1. The myth recounted here overlaps, with points of both similarity and difference.

64. The king uses the same procedure as the Buddha. When presented with an alleged wrong-doer, the first thing is to ask them whether they did it.

and father, partners and children. Work for a living, and establish an uplifting religious donation for ascetics and brahmins that's conducive to heaven, ripens in happiness, and leads to heaven.'⁶⁵

10.16 'Yes, Your Majesty,' replied that man.

11.1 But then another man stole something from others. They arrested him and presented him to the king, saying, 'Your Majesty, this person stole from others.'

11.5 The king said to that person, 'Is it really true, mister, that you stole from others?'

11.7 'It's true, sire.'

11.8 'What was the reason?'

11.9 'Sire, I can't survive.'

11.10 So the king provided some money to that person, saying, 'With this money, mister, keep yourself alive, and provide for your mother and father, partners and children. Work for a living, and establish an uplifting religious donation for ascetics and brahmins that's conducive to heaven, ripens in happiness, and leads to heaven.'

11.12 'Yes, Your Majesty,' replied that man.

12.1 People heard about this: 'It seems the king is providing money to anyone who steals from others!'⁶⁶ It occurred to them, 'Why don't we steal from others?' So then another man stole something from others.

12.6 They arrested him and presented him to the king, saying, 'Your Majesty, this person stole from others.'

12.9 The king said to that person, 'Is it really true, mister, that you stole from others?'

12.11 'It's true, sire.'

12.12 'What was the reason?'

12.13 'Sire, I can't survive.'

65. Simply providing money is not enough, nor is simply expecting that people can just work for what they want. They need something to get started, together with the support and opportunity to build a life for themselves.

66. Sadly, bad faith actors take advantage of kindness.

Then the king thought, 'If I provide money to anyone who steals 12.14
from others, it will only increase the stealing. I'd better make an
end of this person, finish him off, and chop off his head.'⁶⁷

Then he ordered his men, 'Well then, my men, tie this man's 12.17
arms tightly behind his back with a strong rope. Shave his head and
march him from street to street and square to square to the beating
of a harsh drum. Then take him out the south gate and make an
end of him, finish him off, and chop off his head.'

'Yes, Your Majesty,' they replied, and did as he commanded. 12.19

People heard about this: 'It seems the king is chopping the head 13.1
off anyone who steals from others!' It occurred to them, 'We'd
better have sharp swords made. Then when we steal from others,
we'll make an end of them, finish them off, and chop off their
heads.'⁶⁸ They had sharp swords made. Then they started to make
raids on villages, towns, and cities, and to infest the highways. And
they chopped the heads off anyone they stole from.

And so, mendicants, from not providing money to the penniless, 14.1
poverty became widespread. When poverty was widespread, theft
became widespread. When theft was widespread, swords became
widespread. When swords were widespread, killing living creatures
became widespread. And for the sentient beings among whom
killing was widespread, their lifespan and beauty declined. Those
people lived for 80,000 years, but their children lived for 40,000
years.⁶⁹

Among the people who lived for 40,000 years, a certain person 14.3
stole something from others. They arrested him and presented him
to the king, saying, 'Your Majesty, this person stole from others.'

The king said to that person, 'Is it really true, mister, that you 14.7
stole from others?'

'No, sire,' he said, deliberately lying. 14.9

67. While the king's concern is legitimate, his overreaction escalates the problems.

68. The violence of the state leads to an armed and violent citizenry.

69. Today we can see that, even among developed nations, a degraded and violent culture leads to declining lifespans.

- 15.1 And so, mendicants, from not providing money to the penniless, poverty, theft, swords, and killing became widespread. When killing was widespread, lying became widespread. And for the sentient beings among whom lying was widespread, their lifespan and beauty declined. Those people who lived for 40,000 years had children who lived for 20,000 years.
- 15.3 Among the people who lived for 20,000 years, a certain person stole something from others. Someone else reported this to the king, ‘Your Majesty, such-and-such person stole from others,’ he said, going behind his back.
- 16.1 And so, mendicants, from not providing money to the penniless, poverty, theft, swords, killing, and lying became widespread. When lying was widespread, backbiting became widespread. And for the sentient beings among whom backbiting was widespread, their lifespan and beauty declined. Those people who lived for 20,000 years had children who lived for 10,000 years.
- 17.1 Among the people who lived for 10,000 years, some were beautiful, some were ugly. And the ugly beings, coveting the beautiful ones, committed adultery with the wives of others.⁷⁰
- 17.3 And so, mendicants, from not providing money to the penniless, poverty, theft, swords, killing, lying, and backbiting became widespread. When backbiting was widespread, sexual misconduct became widespread. And for the sentient beings among whom sexual misconduct was widespread, their lifespan and beauty declined. Those people who lived for 10,000 years had children who lived for 5,000 years.
- 17.5 Among the people who lived for 5,000 years, two things became widespread: harsh speech and talking nonsense.⁷¹ For the sentient beings among whom these two things were widespread, their lifes-

70. *Paresam dāresu*: both “others” and “wives” are in plural, so polygyny is assumed. Compare *parassa dāresu* (“the wives of another”) at SN 55.7:6.3. Note the significance granted to beauty in influencing human society.

71. At this point, the three factors of wrong action—killing, stealing, and sexual misconduct—are present, as are the four factors of wrong speech—lying, backbiting, harsh speech, and nonsensical speech.

pan and beauty declined. Those people who lived for 5,000 years had some children who lived for 2,500 years, while others lived for 2,000 years.

Among the people who lived for 2,500 years, desire and ill will became widespread. For the sentient beings among whom desire and ill will were widespread, their lifespan and beauty declined. Those people who lived for 2,500 years had children who lived for 1,000 years. 17.9

Among the people who lived for 1,000 years, wrong view became widespread.⁷² For the sentient beings among whom wrong view was widespread, their lifespan and beauty declined. Those people who lived for 1,000 years had children who lived for five hundred years. 17.12

Among the people who lived for five hundred years, three things became widespread: illicit desire, immoral greed, and wrong custom.⁷³ For the sentient beings among whom these three things were widespread, their lifespan and beauty declined. Those people who lived for five hundred years had some children who lived for 17.15

72. This completes the three factors of unskillful thought: desire, ill will, and wrong views (which are a strong form of delusion). Here wrong view probably means moral nihilism.

73. These three terms recur in a similar context at AN 3.56:2.1. The commentaries to the two passages give quite different explanations. | “Illicit desire” (*adhammarāgo*) probably refers to any form of desire that is illegal or transgressive, such as incest, rape, or pedophilia. | “Immoral greed” (*visamalobho*) implies excess and imbalance. Both are, however, explained in the commentary to AN 3.56:2.1 as desire for the belongings of others. | *Micchādhammo* is hard to pin down. Its opposite, *sammā dhammo* always means “right teaching”. The commentary here explains it as “men with men and women with women”, but this must be rejected as there is no hint anywhere in early Pali (or elsewhere in early Indian culture) that homosexual relations were considered immoral. The commentary to AN 3.56:2.1 explains it as “indulgence in what is reckoned an inappropriate basis” (*avatthupaṭisevanasaṅkhātēna*). This implies intercourse with one of the women mentioned at MN 41:8.4, which includes those who are “protected by principle” (*dhammarakkhitā*). This sense of *dhamma* is explained at Bu Ss 5:4.2.16 as “religion”. Here I think the sense is similar: customs or beliefs that legitimize immorality.

two hundred and fifty years, while others lived for two hundred years.

17.19 Among the people who lived for two hundred and fifty years, these things became widespread: lack of due respect for mother and father, ascetics and brahmins, and failure to honor the elders in the family.

18.1 And so, mendicants, from not providing money to the penniless, all these things became widespread—poverty, theft, swords, killing, lying, backbiting, sexual misconduct, harsh speech and talking nonsense, desire and ill will, wrong view, illicit desire, immoral greed, and wrong custom, and lack of due respect for mother and father, ascetics and brahmins, and failure to honor the elders in the family. For the sentient beings among whom these things were widespread, their lifespan and beauty declined. Those people who lived for two hundred and fifty years had children who lived for a hundred years.⁷⁴

5. When People Live for Ten Years

19.1 There will come a time, mendicants, when these people will have children who live for ten years.⁷⁵ Among the people who live for ten years, girls will be marriageable at five.⁷⁶ The following flavors will disappear: ghee, butter, oil, honey, molasses, and salt. The best

74. This brings us to the Buddha's present.

75. Here the Buddha paints a devastating picture of societal collapse. Life expectancy as low as thirty years has been recorded in some countries in the 20th century.

76. The age of onset of puberty has been dropping globally over the past century, with isolated cases as young as five.

kind of food will be finger millet,⁷⁷ just as fine rice with meat is the best kind of food today.⁷⁸

The ten ways of doing skillful deeds will totally disappear, and 19.8
the ten ways of doing unskillful deeds will explode in popularity.⁷⁹
Those people will not even have the word ‘skillful’, still less anyone
who does what is skillful.⁸⁰ And anyone who disrespects mother
and father, ascetics and brahmins, and fails to honor the elders in
the family will be venerated and praised, just as the opposite is
venerated and praised today.

There’ll be no recognition of the status of mother, aunts, or wives 20.1
and partners of teachers and respected people.⁸¹ The world will
become dissolute, like goats and sheep, chickens and pigs, and dogs
and jackals.⁸²

They’ll be full of hostility towards each other, with acute ill will, 20.3
malevolence, and thoughts of murder. Even a mother will feel like
this for her child, and the child for its mother, father for child, child
for father, brother for sister, and sister for brother. They’ll be just
like a deer hunter when he sees a deer—full of hostility, ill will,
malevolence, and thoughts of killing.

77. “Finger millet” (*kudrūsaka*; Pahari *kodra*, Garhwal *koda*) is a robust secondary grain in Asia and Africa, growing in places rice cannot. Due to its resilience in the face of global heating, 2023 was declared the International Year of Millets by the UN.

78. The Buddha’s father gave this luxury food to servants and staff (AN 3.39:2.3).

79. The narrative above traced the gradual disappearance of these ten factors. | *Atibyādippissanti* is a unique term. At AN 7.66:9.2 a sign of the end of days is the “erupting” (*ādippanti*) of volcanoes, suggesting “explode” for the intensive form here.

80. “Skillful” is *kusala*, otherwise translated as “good” or “wholesome”.

81. At AN 2.9 = Iti 42 the world is protected from this by conscience and prudence.

82. For *sambheda* in the sense of “dissolving, leaking”, see DN 3:1.15.11, AN 5.103:6.4, AN 10.45:4.1. The commentary here says “mixedness, breaking of boundaries”.

- 21.1 Among the people who live for ten years, there will be an interregnum of swords lasting seven days.⁸³ During that time they will see each other as beasts.⁸⁴ Sharp swords will appear in their hands, with which they'll take each other's life, crying, 'It's a beast! It's a beast!'
- 21.5 But then some of those beings will think, 'Let us neither kill nor be killed! Why don't we hide in thick grass, thick jungle, thick trees, inaccessible riverlands, or rugged mountains and survive on forest roots and fruits?'⁸⁵ So that's what they do.
- 21.8 When those seven days have passed, having emerged from their hiding places and embraced each other, they will come together and cry in one voice,⁸⁶ 'Fantastic, dear foe, you live! Fantastic, dear foe, you live!'⁸⁷

6. The Period of Growth

- 21.11 Then those beings will think, 'It's because we undertook unskillful things that we suffered such an extensive loss of our relatives. We'd better do what's skillful. What skillful thing should we do? Why don't we refrain from killing living creatures? Having undertaken this skillful thing we'll live by it.'⁸⁸ So that's what they do. Because of undertaking this skillful thing, their lifespan and beauty will

83. "Interregnum of swords" is *satthantarakappo*. Seven days seems optimistic.

84. Dehumanization of the other is an essential precursor to genocide.

85. "Let us neither kill nor be killed" (*mā ca mayam kañci, mā ca amhe koci*) is an idiomatic phrase, the Golden Rule framed as a negative: "Let us not do unto others nor let others do unto us." It is explained by the commentary as, "Let us not take even a single person's life or let them take ours".

86. *Sabhāgāyissanti* = *sabhāga* + *āyissanti* = "will come together". | *Samassāsi-santi* = *sama* + *sāsati* = "cry in one voice". The latter term is absent from some manuscripts.

87. *Diṭṭhā* is Sanskrit *diṣṭyā*, "fantastic, how fortunate", per DN 16:2.24.5 and Ja 81:1.4. | *Sattā* is nominative singular for *sattar* ("enemy"), not plural of *satta* ("being"), which disagrees with both verb and vocative in number.

88. The first precept, and the first of the ten ways of skillful action. The Buddhist ethical principles are not just a part of Buddhist teaching, they are essential for the healthy functioning of human society.

grow. Those people who live for ten years will have children who live for twenty years.

Then those beings will think, ‘Because of undertaking this skillful thing, our lifespan and beauty are growing. Why don’t we do even more skillful things? What skillful thing should we do? Why don’t we refrain from stealing ... sexual misconduct ... lying ... backbiting ... harsh speech ... and talking nonsense. Why don’t we give up covetousness ... ill will ... wrong view ... three things: illicit desire, immoral greed, and wrong custom. Why don’t we pay due respect to mother and father, ascetics and brahmins, honoring the elders in our families? Having undertaken this skillful thing we’ll live by it.’ So that’s what they do. 22.1

Because of undertaking this skillful thing, their lifespan and beauty will grow. Those people who live for twenty years will have children who live for forty years. Those people who live for forty years will have children who live for eighty years, then a hundred and sixty years, three hundred and twenty years, six hundred and forty years, 2,000 years, 4,000 years, 8,000 years, 20,000 years, 40,000 years, and finally 80,000 years. Among the people who live for 80,000 years, girls will be marriageable at five hundred. 22.18

7. The Time of King Saṅkha

Among the people who live for 80,000 years, there will be just three afflictions: greed, starvation, and old age.⁸⁹ India will be successful and prosperous. The villages, towns, and capital cities will be no more than a chicken’s flight apart. And the land will be as crowded as hell with people, like a thicket of rushes or reeds. The royal capital will be Varanasi, renamed Ketumatī. And it will be successful, prosperous, populous, full of people, with plenty of 23.5

89. In the legendary past, too, only these three afflictions prevailed (Sn̐p 2.7:29.1).

food.⁹⁰ There will be 84,000 cities in India, with the royal capital of Ketumatī foremost.

- 24.1 And in the royal capital of Ketumatī a king named Saṅkha will arise, a wheel-turning monarch, a just and principled king. His dominion will extend to all four sides, he will achieve stability in the country, and possess the seven treasures.⁹¹ He will have the following seven treasures: the wheel, the elephant, the horse, the jewel, the woman, the treasurer, and the counselor as the seventh treasure. He will have over a thousand sons who are valiant and heroic, crushing the armies of his enemies. After conquering this land girt by sea, he will reign by principle, without rod or sword.

8. The Arising of the Buddha Metteyya

- 25.1 And the Blessed One named Metteyya will arise in the world—perfected, a fully awakened Buddha, accomplished in knowledge and conduct, holy, knower of the world, supreme guide for those who wish to train, teacher of gods and humans, awakened, blessed—⁹² just as I have arisen today.⁹³ He will realize with his own insight this world—with its gods, Māras and Brahmās, this population with its ascetics and brahmins, gods and humans—and make it known to others, just as I do today. He will teach the Dhamma that’s good in the beginning, good in the middle, and good in the end, meaningful and well-phrased. And he will reveal a spiritual practice that’s entirely full and pure, just as I do today.

90. Ketumatī means “adorned with flags”.

91. Saṅkha is “conch shell”.

92. This is the only sutta appearance of the future Buddha Metteyya (Sanskrit Maitreya, meaning “one full of love”). He became a prominent figure in later Buddhism.

93. Throughout, the Buddha is concerned to emphasize that the future Buddha will offer no more or less than his own teaching and practice. He wanted people to practice now, not to establish a cult of a future savior.

He will lead a Saṅgha of many thousand mendicants, just as I lead a Saṅgha of many hundreds today.⁹⁴

Then King Saṅkha will have the sacrificial post once built by King Mahāpanāda raised up.⁹⁵ Having reigned, he will abdicate, offering charity to ascetics and brahmins, paupers, vagrants, nomads, and beggars. Then, having shaved off his hair and beard and dressed in ocher robes, he will go forth from the lay life to homelessness in the Buddha Metteyya's presence.⁹⁶ Soon after going forth, living withdrawn, diligent, keen, and resolute, he will realize the supreme end of the spiritual path in this very life. He will live having achieved with his own insight the goal for which gentlemen rightly go forth from the lay life to homelessness. 26.1

Mendicants, live as your own island, your own refuge, with no other refuge. Let the teaching be your island and your refuge, with no other refuge. And how does a mendicant do this? It's when a mendicant meditates by observing an aspect of the body—keen, aware, and mindful, rid of covetousness and displeasure for the world. They meditate observing an aspect of feelings ... mind ... principles—keen, aware, and mindful, rid of covetousness and displeasure for the world. That's how a mendicant lives as their own island, their own refuge, with no other refuge. That's how they let the teaching be their island and their refuge, with no other refuge. 27.1

94. The maximum number of monastics cited in the suttas is 1250 at a single gathering.

95. This event is found in Bhaddaji's verses at Thag 2.22, expanded to a full story at Ja 264. The commentary explains *yūpa* as "palace", but Bhaddaji's verses clearly depict a sacrificial post, to which the animal would be tied for slaughter. Such posts are connected with the horse sacrifice, which establishes imperial power. This is but one aspect of the wheel-turning monarch to draw on imagery from the horse sacrifice. Here, of course, no horses are killed.

96. *Ajjhāvasati* in this sutta means "reign" not "dwell" (DN 26:2.5).

9. On Long Life and Beauty for Mendicants

28.1 Mendicants, you should roam inside your own territory, the domain of your fathers. Doing so, you will grow in life span, beauty, happiness, wealth, and power.

28.3 And what is long life for a mendicant? It's when a mendicant develops the basis of psychic power that has immersion due to enthusiasm, and active effort. They develop the basis of psychic power that has immersion due to energy, and active effort. They develop the basis of psychic power that has immersion due to mental development, and active effort. They develop the basis of psychic power that has immersion due to inquiry, and active effort. Having developed and cultivated these four bases of psychic power they may, if they wish, live for the proper lifespan or what's left of it. This is long life for a mendicant.

28.10 And what is beauty for a mendicant? It's when a mendicant is ethical, restrained in the monastic code, conducting themselves well and seeking alms in suitable places. Seeing danger in the slightest fault, they keep the rules they've undertaken. This is beauty for a mendicant.

28.13 And what is happiness for a mendicant? It's when a mendicant, quite secluded from sensual pleasures, secluded from unskillful qualities, enters and remains in the first absorption, which has the rapture and bliss born of seclusion, while placing the mind and keeping it connected. As the placing of the mind and keeping it connected are stilled, they enter and remain in the second absorption ... third absorption ... fourth absorption. This is happiness for a mendicant.

28.19 And what is wealth for a mendicant? It's when a monk meditates spreading a heart full of love to one direction, and to the second, and to the third, and to the fourth. In the same way above, below, across, everywhere, all around, they spread a heart full of love to the whole world—abundant, expansive, limitless, free of enmity and ill will. They meditate spreading a heart full of compassion ... rejoicing ... equanimity to one direction, and to the second, and to

the third, and to the fourth. In the same way above, below, across, everywhere, all around, they spread a heart full of equanimity to the whole world—abundant, expansive, limitless, free of enmity and ill will. This is wealth for a mendicant.

And what is power for a mendicant? It's when a mendicant 28.25 realizes the undefiled freedom of heart and freedom by wisdom in this very life. And they live having realized it with their own insight due to the ending of defilements. This is power for a mendicant.

Mendicants, I do not see a single power so hard to defeat as the 28.28 power of Māra. It is due to undertaking skillful qualities that merit grows.”

That is what the Buddha said. Satisfied, the mendicants ap- 28.30 proved what the Buddha said.

DN 27

What Came First

Aggaññasutta

- 1.1 SO I HAVE HEARD.⁹⁷ At one time the Buddha was staying near Sāvattthī in the Eastern Monastery, in the stilt longhouse of Migāra's mother.⁹⁸
- 1.3 Now at that time Vāseṭṭha and Bhāradvāja were living on probation among the mendicants in hopes of being ordained.⁹⁹ Then in the late afternoon, the Buddha came downstairs from the longhouse and was walking mindfully in the open air, beneath the shade of the longhouse.

97. This sutta is the closest we come to a Buddhist myth of origins. It draws on features of Vedic mythology, while giving its own spin. Related stories may be found in DN 26 and Snp 2.7. The Buddha describes a natural process of evolution that requires no metaphysical intervention, yet differs strikingly from Darwinian evolution in prioritizing the role of desire over selection.

98. After the Jetavana, this was the best-known monastery in Sāvattthī. It was offered by the lady Visākhā, known as Migāra's mother.

99. We met Vāseṭṭha and Bhāradvāja as the students of Pokkharasādi and Tārukkha respectively in DN 13, at the end of which they went for refuge. Some time later they must have asked for ordination. The commentary says that probation (*paravasati*) was required, not because they had previously gone forth in other sects (as the naked ascetic Kassapa at DN 8:24.1 or the wanderer Subhadda at DN 16:5.29.1), nor because they had committed an offence, but because they were not yet the required twenty years of age.

Vāseṭṭha saw him¹⁰⁰ and said to Bhāradvāja, “Reverend Bhāradvāja, the Buddha is walking mindfully in the open air, beneath the shade of the longhouse. Come, reverend, let’s go to the Buddha. Hopefully we’ll get to hear a Dhamma talk from him.” 2.1

“Yes, reverend,” replied Bhāradvāja. 2.6

So they went to the Buddha, bowed, and walked beside him. 2.7

Then the Buddha said to Vāseṭṭha, “Vāseṭṭha, you are both brahmins by birth and clan, and have gone forth from the lay life to homelessness from a brahmin family. I hope you don’t have to suffer abuse and insults from the brahmins.” 3.1

“Actually, sir, the brahmins do insult and abuse us with their typical insults to the fullest extent.” 3.3

“But how do the brahmins insult you?” 3.4

“Sir, the brahmins say: ‘Only brahmins are the best class; other classes are inferior.’¹⁰¹ Only brahmins are the light class; other classes are dark.’¹⁰² Only brahmins are purified, not others.’¹⁰³ Only brahmins are Brahmā’s rightful sons, born of his mouth, born of Brahmā, created by Brahmā, heirs of Brahmā. You’ve both abandoned the best class to join an inferior class, namely these shavelings, fake ascetics, primitives, black spawn from the feet of our kinsman.’¹⁰⁴ 3.5

100. Here as in DN 13 Vāseṭṭha takes the lead.

101. This verse is also at MN 84:9.19 and MN 93:5.4. | For “best class” (*seṭṭho vaṇṇo*) see *varṇaśreṣṭhaḥ* at Mahābhārata 1.24.4c.

102. Mahābhārata 12.181.5 says that brahmins are the white class, aristocrats red, peasants yellow, and menials black. Underlying this is an assumption of the superiority of the fair-skinned northerners of Indo-Aryan descent over the dark-skinned natives (see DN 3:1.10.3).

103. I cannot trace this statement to Brahmanical texts, and indeed they have a strong tendency to push back against the idea that only brahmins can find purity.

104. An allusion to the famous Puruṣasūkta (Rig Veda 10.90.12): “His (the cosmic Man’s) mouth became the brahmin, his arms became the ruler (*rājanya*, an alternate name for the *khattiyas*), his thighs became the peasant (*vaiśya*); the menial (*sūdra*) was born from his feet.” This belongs to the latest portion of the Rig Veda, and probably represents a time when the system of four castes was established in the late Vedic period, some centuries before the Buddha.

This is not right, it's not proper!' That's how the brahmins insult us."

- 4.1 "Actually, Vāseṭṭha, the brahmins are forgetting their tradition when they say this to you. For brahmin women are seen menstruating, being pregnant, giving birth, and breast-feeding.¹⁰⁵ Yet even though they're born from a brahmin womb they say: 'Only brahmins are the best class; other classes are inferior. Only brahmins are the light class; other classes are dark. Only brahmins are purified, not others. Only brahmins are Brahmā's rightful sons, born of his mouth, born of Brahmā, created by Brahmā, heirs of Brahmā.' They misrepresent the brahmins, speak falsely, and create much wickedness.

1. Purification in the Four Classes

- 5.1 Vāseṭṭha, there are these four classes: aristocrats, brahmins, peasants, and menials. Some aristocrats kill living creatures, steal, and commit sexual misconduct. They use speech that's false, divisive, harsh, and nonsensical. And they're covetous, malicious, with wrong view. These things are unskillful, blameworthy, not to be cultivated, unworthy of the noble ones—and are reckoned as such. They are dark deeds with dark results, criticized by sensible people. Such things are exhibited in some aristocrats.¹⁰⁶ And they are also seen among some brahmins, peasants, and menials.
- 6.1 But some aristocrats refrain from killing living creatures, stealing, and committing sexual misconduct. They refrain from speech

Apart from this, the Rig Veda hardly mentions any of these as castes, let alone all four together.

105. The Buddha gives a rationalist critique of Vedic myth (see also MN 93:5.9), the fairness of which is not easy to assess. Within the Brahmanical world, especially the progressive Kosalan brahmins to whom Vāseṭṭha and Bhāradvāja belonged, there had been a shift towards a more nuanced symbolic understanding of such claims. Yet the subtle distinctions of the philosophers rarely influence the more straightforward beliefs of the common practitioner.

106. "Dark" (*kaṇha*) and "bright" (or "light", *sukka*) are redefined in ethical not racial terms.

that's false, divisive, harsh, and nonsensical. And they're content, kind-hearted, with right view. These things are skillful, blameless, to be cultivated, worthy of the noble ones—and are reckoned as such. They are bright deeds with bright results, praised by sensible people. Such things are exhibited in some aristocrats. And they are also seen among some brahmins, peasants, and menials.

Both these things occur like this, mixed up in these four 7.1
 classes—the dark and the bright, that which is praised and that which is criticized by sensible people. Yet of this the brahmins say: 'Only brahmins are the best class; other classes are inferior. Only brahmins are the light class; other classes are dark. Only brahmins are purified, not others. Only brahmins are Brahmā's rightful sons, born of his mouth, born of Brahmā, created by Brahmā, heirs of Brahmā.'

Sensible people don't acknowledge this. Why is that? Because 7.6
 any mendicant from these four classes who is perfected—with defilements ended, who has completed the spiritual journey, done what had to be done, laid down the burden, achieved their own true goal, utterly ended the fetters of rebirth, and is rightly freed through enlightenment—is said to be foremost by virtue of principle, not against principle.¹⁰⁷ For principle, Vāsetṭha, is the best thing for people in both this life and the next.

And here's a way to understand how this is so. 7.10

King Pasenadi of Kosala knows that the ascetic Gotama has gone 8.1
 forth from the neighboring clan of the Sakyans. And the Sakyans are his vassals.¹⁰⁸ The Sakyans show deference to King Pasenadi by bowing down, rising up, greeting him with joined palms, and

107. Vedic theory claimed that the caste system was part of the order of nature (*dhamma*) established by Brahmā, and hence to follow the obligations of caste was a duty (also *dhamma*). The Buddha posited a higher "principle" (*dhamma*) beyond caste. The English word "principle" carries the senses of a fundamental law; a code of conduct; a devotion to right living; a source; and an underlying faculty, all of which are aspects of *dhamma* in this passage.

108. A great king such as Pasenadi ruled his central realm, while outlying districts pledged allegiance to him, enjoying royal protection while ceding some sovereignty. It is the same relationship described for the kingdoms

observing proper etiquette for him. Now, King Pasenadi shows the same kind of deference to the Realized One. But he doesn't think: 'The ascetic Gotama is well-born, I am ill-born.'¹⁰⁹ He is powerful, I am weak. He is handsome, I am ugly. He is influential, I am insignificant.' Rather, in showing such deference to the Realized One he is only honoring, respecting, and venerating principle. And here's another way to understand how principle is the best thing for people in both this life and the next.

- 9.1 Vāsetṭha, you have different births, names, and clans, and have gone forth from the lay life to homelessness from different families. When they ask you what you are, you claim to be ascetics, followers of the Sakyan. But only when someone has faith in the Realized One—settled, rooted, and planted deep, strong, not to be shifted by any ascetic or brahmin or god or Māra or Brahmā or by anyone in the world—is it appropriate for them to say: 'I am the Buddha's rightful child, born from his mouth, born of principle, created by principle, heir to principle.'¹¹⁰ Why is that? For these are terms for the Realized One: 'the embodiment of principle', and 'the embodiment of divinity', and 'the manifestation of principle', and 'the manifestation of divinity'.¹¹¹

- 10.1 There comes a time when, Vāsetṭha, after a very long period has passed, this cosmos contracts.¹¹² As the cosmos contracts, sentient beings are mostly headed for the realm of streaming radiance. There

subsumed under the Wheel-Turning Monarch (eg. DN 17:1.9.5). The Buddha described his people as natives among the Kosalans at Snp 3.1:18.4.

109. The Mahāsaṅgīti reading *na naṃ* yields a better sense than the PTS *nanu*, which would make this a question.

110. The Buddha adapts the Brahmanical rhetoric of birth from the "mouth of Brahmā". Having criticized them for taking this literally he employs it in a metaphorical sense.

111. "The embodiment of principle" is *dhammakāya*. This is a term of unique occurrence in the suttas, which was seized on in later days to posit a metaphysical theory of a quasi-eternal Buddha. In the suttas, it means that he, having practiced the Dhamma to its fullest, embodies the qualities of the Dhamma to the highest degree.

112. Here begins the story of origins. The Buddha begins his creation myth with the end of the world. For this passage, compare DN 1:2.2.1.

they are mind-made, feeding on rapture, self-luminous, moving through the sky, steadily glorious, and they remain like that for a very long time.

There comes a time when, after a very long period has passed, 10.4 this cosmos expands. As the cosmos expands, sentient beings mostly pass away from that host of radiant deities and come back to this realm.¹¹³ Here they are mind-made, feeding on rapture, self-luminous, moving through the sky, steadily glorious, and they remain like that for a very long time.¹¹⁴

2. The Earth's Nectar Appears

But the single mass of water at that time was utterly dark.¹¹⁵ The 11.1 moon and sun were not found, nor were stars and constellations, day and night, months and fortnights, years and seasons, or male and female. Beings were simply known as 'beings'.¹¹⁶ After a very long period had passed, the earth's nectar curdled in the water.¹¹⁷ It

113. In the *Brahmajālasutta*, beings pass from one *Brahmā* realm to another, but when they come to this world it is as a human. Here we have a different perspective, where beings apparently still like the *Brahmā* gods exist in the physical realm.

114. The role of food is critical throughout this narrative. Food is a fundamental sustenance on which all creatures must rely, and the nature of the food reflects the type of creature that eats it. *Taittiriya Upaniṣad* 2.5.1 says the highest form of self is made of bliss (*ātmā ānandamaya*).

115. Creation myths often begin with a dark, formless world of water, and describe the emergence of divisions and structures of the world. They do not differentiate the physical, biological, ecological, or social, as such distinctions came later.

116. Throughout, the discourse has a special interest in tracing the origins of language and how different usages came about. Here the term "beings" is presented as a natural choice: they are "beings" because they are alive. Later, words are selected to convey a certain political or moral stance.

117. The reading and sense of *samatani* is obscure. I think it is connected with *santānaka* in the next line, in the sense of "networks" or tendrils appearing in the water as it curdles. The Sanskrit at SF 277 and *Mūlasarvāstivāda Vinaya* 17 has *saṁmūrcchitaḥ saṁtanoti* ("curdled tendrils"). | *Rasapathavī* ("earth's nectar") is also obscure. We would expect *pathavirasa* (cp. *phalarasa* "fruit

appeared just like the curd on top of hot milk-rice as it cools. It was beautiful, fragrant, and delicious, like ghee or butter. And it was as sweet as pure dwarf-bee honey.¹¹⁸ Now, one of those beings was reckless. Thinking, ‘Oh my, what might this be?’ they tasted the earth’s nectar with their finger.¹¹⁹ They enjoyed it, and craving was born in them.¹²⁰ And other beings, following that being’s example, tasted the earth’s nectar with their fingers. They too enjoyed it, and craving was born in them.

3. The Moon and Sun Appear

- 12.1 Then those beings started to eat the earth’s nectar, breaking it into lumps. But when they did this their luminosity vanished. And with the vanishing of their luminosity the moon and sun appeared, stars and constellations appeared, days and nights were distinguished, and so were months and fortnights, and years and seasons. So far had the world evolved once more.
- 13.1 Then those beings eating the earth’s nectar, with that as their food and nourishment, remained for a very long time. But so long as they ate that earth’s nectar, their bodies became more solid and they diverged in appearance; some beautiful, some ugly. And the beautiful beings looked down on the ugly ones:¹²¹ ‘We’re more beautiful, they’re the ugly ones!’ And the vanity of the beautiful

juice”, etc.), which is indeed found at SN 5.9:5.3 in the sense “nutriments in soil”. Since this reading also appears here in the Sanskrit sources, I assume it is the correct sense.

118. *Khuddā* (literally “small one”) is said to be a species of small bee, also known in Sanskrit as *kṣudrā*. The “dwarf bee” (*apis florea*) fits the bill, as it is a small wild honeybee found in India.

119. Ghee and honey were among the finest offerings to the gods. The soma was often described as “honeyed”. Our text is suggesting that the Vedic sacrifices led to the corruption of divinity.

120. For *acchadesi* read *assādesi* (“enjoyed”) after Mu Kd 17’s *āsvādayati*. The commentary explains *acchadesi* as “becomes suffused”, so if it is a misreading it is an old one.

121. At DN 26:17.2 it is the ugly ones who are at fault for jealousy.

ones made the earth's nectar vanish. They gathered together and bemoaned, 'Oh, what a taste! Oh, what a taste!' And even today when people get something tasty they say: 'Oh, what a taste! Oh, what a taste!' They're just remembering an ancient primordial saying, but they don't understand what it means.¹²²

4. Ground-Fungus

When the earth's nectar had vanished, ground-fungus appeared to those beings.¹²³ It appeared just like a mushroom. It was beautiful, fragrant, and delicious, like ghee or butter. And it was as sweet as pure dwarf-bee honey. 14.1

Then those beings started to eat the ground-fungus. With that as their food and nourishment, they remained for a very long time. But so long as they ate that ground-fungus, their bodies became more solid and they diverged in appearance; some beautiful, some ugly. And the beautiful beings looked down on the ugly ones: 'We're more beautiful, they're the ugly ones!' And the vanity of the beautiful ones made the ground-fungus vanish. 14.5

122. This is another veiled critique of the Vedic tradition. In DN 13:13.1 the Buddha told Vāseṭṭha and Bhāradvāja the Vedas were recited by people who did not understand them. This problem was well understood within the tradition of the Brāhmaṇas and Upaniṣads, which constantly emphasized that they are effective for "one who knows this" (*ya evam veda*).

123. "Fungus" is *pappaṭaka* (Sanskrit *parpaṭaka*). At Bu Pj 1:2.2.5, Moggaḷlāna suggests that, to alleviate famine, the monks might eat the *pappaṭakojaṃ* ("fungus-nutrition") under the earth. Given that it is compared to a mushroom, I think it is the fungal mycelia of a mycorrhizal network. Such fungi spread like tendrils underground, sometimes appearing above the surface, sharing nutrients and information between organisms.

5. Bursting Pods

- 14.13 When the ground-fungus had vanished, bursting pods appeared, like the fruit of the kadam tree.¹²⁴ They were beautiful, fragrant, and delicious, like ghee or butter. And they were as sweet as pure dwarf-bee honey.
- 15.1 Then those beings started to eat the bursting pods. With that as their food and nourishment, they remained for a very long time. But so long as they ate those bursting pods, their bodies became more solid and they diverged in appearance; some beautiful, some ugly. And the beautiful beings looked down on the ugly ones: ‘We’re more beautiful, they’re the ugly ones!’ And the vanity of the beautiful ones made the bursting pods vanish.
- 15.8 They gathered together and bemoaned, ‘Oh, what we’ve lost! Oh, what we’ve lost—those bursting pods!’ And even today when people experience suffering they say: ‘Oh, what we’ve lost! Oh, what we’ve lost!’ They’re just remembering an ancient primordial saying, but they don’t understand what it means.

6. Ripe Untilled Rice

- 16.1 When the bursting pods had vanished, ripe untilled rice appeared to those beings. It had no powder or husk, pure and fragrant, with only the rice-grain. What they took for supper in the evening, by the morning had grown back and ripened. And what they took for breakfast in the morning had grown back and ripened by the evening, leaving no trace showing. Then those beings eating

124. Readings and meaning of *padālatā* are uncertain. It has usually been understood that the second element is *latā* (“creeper”). But this leaves *padā* unexplained, and the commentary’s gloss of *bhaddālatā* is unconvincing. It also leaves unexplained the connection with *kalambukā*. This is probably the fruit of the kadam tree—fleshy, yellow-orange capsules with about 8000 seeds that split apart when ripe. I think *padālatā* is related to *padālana* in the sense of “bursting”: a seed pod that splits open like a fig or pomegranate.

the ripe untilled rice, with that as their food and nourishment, remained for a very long time.

7. Gender Appears

But so long as they ate that ripe untilled rice, their bodies became 16.7 more solid and they diverged in appearance. And female characteristics appeared on women, while male characteristics appeared on men.¹²⁵ Women spent too much time gazing at men, and men at women. They became lustful, and their bodies burned with fever. Due to this fever they had sex with each other.

Those who saw them having sex pelted them with dirt, clods, 16.11 or cow-dung, saying,¹²⁶ ‘Get lost, filth! Get lost, filth!’¹²⁷ How on earth can one being do that to another?’¹²⁸ And even today people in some countries, when carrying a bride off, pelt her with dirt, clods, or cow-dung.¹²⁹ They’re just remembering an ancient primordial saying, but they don’t understand what it means.

125. The commentary to Bu Pj 1:10.6.1 explains “male characteristics” as “beard and whiskers, etc.” (*massudāṭṭhikādi*), so this is not just genitals but also secondary sex characteristics.

126. Pali *seṭṭhi* is explained by the commentary as “ash” (*chārikā*), although this sense does not seem to be attested anywhere else. Mahāvastu has *leṣṭu* while Mu Kd 17 has *loṣṭa*, both explained as “clod”. Given that it is easier to throw a clod than ash, I think these probably convey the correct sense.

127. *Nassa* could mean “die!” or “get lost”. I take the softer meaning, as killing has not yet appeared among these beings. | This behavior looks much like scapegoating rituals, where certain members of the community are deemed to bear the sins of all and are sacrificed to erase the sin. Often the victim was expelled from the community, temporarily or permanently.

128. Mob shaming over perceived sexual transgression is the most primitive form of moralizing.

129. “Carrying off” (*nibbuyhamānā*) like being swept away by a river. Mu Kd 17 says they throw powder, scent, garlands, and nets, while wishing the bride happiness and well-being.

8. Sexual Intercourse

- 17.1 What was deemed as unprincipled at that time, these days is deemed as principled.¹³⁰ The beings who had sex together weren't allowed to enter a village or town for one or two months. Ever since they excessively threw themselves into immorality, they started to make buildings to hide their immoral deeds.¹³¹ Then one of those beings of idle disposition thought, 'Hey now, why should I be bothered to gather rice in the evening for supper, and in the morning for breakfast? Why don't I gather rice for supper and breakfast all at once?'¹³²
- 17.8 So that's what he did. Then one of the other beings approached that being and said, 'Come, good being, we shall go to gather rice.' 'There's no need, good being! I gathered rice for supper and breakfast all at once.' So that being, following their example, gathered rice for two days all at once, thinking: 'This seems fine.'¹³³
- 17.13 Then one of the other beings approached that being and said, 'Come, good being, we shall go to gather rice.' 'There's no need, good being! I gathered rice for two days all at once.' So that being, following their example, gathered rice for four days all at once, thinking: 'This seems fine.'
- 17.17 Then one of the other beings approached that being and said, 'Come, good being, we shall go to gather rice.' 'There's no need, good being! I gathered rice for four days all at once.' So that being, following their example, gathered rice for eight days all at once, thinking: 'This seems fine.'

130. "Unprincipled" is *adhamma*. In the past the lovers were spurned, now they are celebrated in marriage.

131. The sight of others having sex provokes strong reactions of arousal, jealousy, and disgust, often leading to violence. A culture of sexual modesty regulates these emotions, promoting the growth of larger societal structures.

132. Human society evolves first from greed, second from sexual desire, and third from laziness. The effort to avoid manual labor drives cultural and technological innovation.

133. Humans are focused on short term comforts and ignore long term consequences.

But when they started to store up rice to eat, the rice grains 17.21
became wrapped in powder and husk, it didn't grow back after
reaping, leaving a trace showing, and the rice stood in clumps.¹³⁴

9. Dividing the Rice

Then those beings gathered together and bemoaned, 'Oh, how 18.1
wicked things have appeared among beings!'¹³⁵ For we used to be
mind-made, feeding on rapture, self-luminous, moving through
the sky, steadily glorious, and we remained like that for a very long
time. After a very long period had passed, the earth's nectar curdled
in the water. But due to bad, unskillful things among us, the earth's
nectar vanished, then the ground-fungus vanished, the bursting
pods vanished, and now the rice grains have become wrapped in
powder and husk, it doesn't grow back after reaping, traces are left
showing, and the rice stands in clumps. We'd better divide up the
rice and lay down boundaries.'¹³⁶ So that's what they did.

Now, one of those beings was reckless. While guarding their 19.1
own share they took another's share without it being given, and ate
it.¹³⁷

They grabbed the one who had done this and said, 'You have 19.2
done a bad thing, good being, in that while guarding your own
share you took another's share without it being given, and ate it.
Do not do such a thing again.'

134. The wild grasses used as grains evolve in adaptation to human needs.

135. The beings tell their story within the story. The oldest myths, such as the Vedas or Gilgamesh, speak of myths that were already ancient for them. And the oldest story of all is the Fall: the death of God, the recession of divinity, how things were better in the old days. The story is a reckoning with the consequences of their actions, yet it is not sufficient for them to change course.

136. Scarcity has arisen because of greed, giving rise to agriculture and land ownership. Up until now, the changes have been driven by individual choice, whereas now they are starting to make agreements among themselves, hoping to mitigate the irresponsibility of individuals.

137. With ownership and inequality come theft.

- 19.5 ‘Yes, sirs,’ replied that being. But for a second time, and a third time they did the same thing, and were told not to continue.¹³⁸ And then they struck that being, some with fists, others with stones, and still others with rods.¹³⁹ From that day on stealing was found, and blame, and lying, and the taking up of rods.¹⁴⁰

10. The Elected King

- 20.1 Then those beings gathered together and bemoaned, ‘Oh, how wicked things have appeared among beings, in that stealing is found, and blaming and lying and the taking up of rods! Why don’t we elect one being who would rightly accuse those who deserve it, blame those who deserve it, and expel those who deserve it?’¹⁴¹ We shall pay them with a share of rice.’¹⁴²
- 20.5 Then those beings approached the being among them who was most attractive, good-looking, lovely, and illustrious, and said,¹⁴³ ‘Come, good being, rightly accuse those who deserve it, blame those who deserve it, and banish those who deserve it.’¹⁴⁴ We shall pay you with a share of rice.’ ‘Yes, sirs,’ replied that being. They acted accordingly, and were paid with a share of rice.

138. It turns out that moral scolding does not deter wrong-doers.

139. The mob violence escalates.

140. All a direct consequence of thoughtless greed and inequality.

141. “Accuse” is *khiyeyya*. Here the beings are taking charge of their social evolution, deciding among themselves how to manage their society. They are active agents in their own story, not merely passive subjects of evolution. And the primary decision they make is to form a democracy by election (*sammata*). Doing so, they create a two-class system: rulers and subjects.

142. The origin of upper class, white-collar workers who do not have to till the soil. Taxes are not coerced, but voluntarily offered in recognition of services rendered.

143. The emphasis on appearance reflects a wider acknowledgement of the potency of beauty in shaping human conduct. The Buddha rejected the notion that beauty indicates worth (eg. SN 21.6), yet was himself regarded as especially beautiful. Unfair it may be, but beautiful people are listened to.

144. The *ehi* formula echoes the original ordination method (Kd 1:6.32.3).

‘Elected by the people,’ Vāsetṭha, is the meaning of ‘elected one,’ 21.1
the first term applied to them.¹⁴⁵

‘Lord of the fields’ is the meaning of ‘aristocrat,’ the second term 21.2
applied to them.¹⁴⁶

‘They please others with principle’ is the meaning of ‘king,’ the 21.3
third term applied to them.¹⁴⁷

And that, Vāsetṭha, is how the ancient primordial terms for the 21.4
circle of aristocrats were created; for those very beings, not others;
for those like them, not unlike; by virtue of principle, not against
principle. For principle, Vāsetṭha, is the best thing for people in
both this life and the next.

145. “Applied to them” (*upanibbattaṃ*) is unique. The Sanskrit texts have *saṃ-jñodapādi*, “arisen by agreement”. It is distinct from DN 17:11.2 above, where beings “come to be called” beings (*saṅkhyam gacchanti*). Clearly it cannot mean the first word that appeared. I take it to mean this was a specialized term invented and applied just for them. The commentary says, *na kevalam akkhrameva*, “not just a universal term”.

146. “Aristocrat” (*khattiya*; Sanskrit *kṣatriya*) is related to *khatta* (“authority”, “power”; in eg. Rig Veda 8.25.8 it is an adjective, “powerful”), hence “ruling class”. The sutta, however, relates it to *khetta*, “field”. The two senses possibly stem from the same root *kṣi* in the sense “owner”, “master” with the “field” being the dominion owned by the chief. In Pali suttas, the primary connotation of the *khattiya* was of an aristocratic land-owning class, so the connection with “field” is apt. *Khattiyas* are often said to be a “warrior” caste, but that is not a primary association in the suttas. They are rarely depicted as having anything to do with the military, which had become professionalized by the time of the Buddha. Nonetheless, at MN 96:10.7 a *khattiya*’s wealth is said to be the bow and arrow. At SN 3.24, the Buddha argues that someone from any caste could be as proficient a warrior as someone from the *khattiya* class.

147. Modern linguists trace the Proto-Indo-European root of *rāja* as **reg* in the sense “[one who leads people in a] straight line”, literally “ruler” or “regulator”. The pun here is meant to emphasize the obligations that a ruler has for their people. As here, *rājā* and *khattiya* can have the same meaning, although commonly a *rājā* is an actual king or chief, while *khattiya* is the class from which the rulers come.

11. The Circle of Brahmins

- 22.1 Then some of those same beings thought, ‘Oh, how wicked things have appeared among beings, in that stealing is found, and blaming and lying and the taking up of rods and banishment! Why don’t we set aside bad, unskillful things?’¹⁴⁸ So that’s what they did.
- 22.5 ‘They set aside bad, unskillful things’ is the meaning of ‘brahmin’, the first term applied to them.¹⁴⁹
- 22.6 They built leaf huts in a wilderness region where they meditated pure and bright, without lighting cooking fires or digging the soil. They came down in the morning for breakfast and in the evening for supper to the village, town, or royal capital seeking a meal.¹⁵⁰ When they had obtained food they continued to meditate in the leaf huts.
- 22.8 When people noticed this they said, ‘These beings build leaf huts in a wilderness region where they meditate pure and bright, without lighting cooking fires or digging the soil. They come down in the morning for breakfast and in the evening for supper to the village, town, or royal capital seeking a meal. When they have obtained food they continue to meditate in the leaf huts.’
- 22.11 ‘They meditate’ is the meaning of ‘meditator’, the second term applied to them.¹⁵¹
- 23.1 But some of those beings were unable to keep up with their meditation in the leaf huts in the wilderness. They came down to

148. Read *bāheyyāma*.

149. *Bāhenti* (“set aside”) sounds a bit like *brāhmaṇa*. Such puns which don’t quite land are sometimes used to infer a language underlying Pali. *Brāhmaṇa* is a Sanskrit form, and the colloquial pronunciation may have been closer to *bāhmaṇa*.

150. The phrase *jhāyanti vītaṅgārā vītadhūmā pannamusalā* works at a double level. *Jhāyanti* is to “meditate” but also is the light of a lamp. *Vītaṅgārā vītadhūmā* means “without coals and smoke”, implying that they do not light cooking fires; but as meditation it means their minds are free of corruptions. *Pannamusalā* is “with shovel put down”, i.e. they do not dig the soil (thus killing the creatures there). Not cooking or digging are also precepts for Buddhist and Jain mendicants.

151. “Meditator” is *jhāyaka*.

the neighborhood of a village or town where they dwelt compiling texts.¹⁵²

When people noticed this they said, ‘These beings were unable 23.2
to keep up with their meditation in the leaf huts in the wilderness.
They came down to the neighborhood of a village or town where
they dwelt compiling texts. Now they don’t meditate.’

‘Now they don’t meditate’ is the meaning of ‘reciter’, the third 23.4
term applied to them.¹⁵³ What was deemed as worse at that time,
these days is deemed as best.

And that, Vāseṭṭha, is how the ancient primordial terms for the 23.6
circle of brahmins were created; for those very beings, not others;
for those like them, not unlike; by virtue of principle, not against
principle. For principle, Vāseṭṭha, is the best thing for people in
both this life and the next.

12. The Circle of Peasants

Some of those same beings, taking up an active sex life, applied 24.1
themselves to various jobs.

‘Having taken up an active sex life, they apply themselves to var- 24.2
ious jobs’ is the meaning of ‘peasant’, the term applied to them.¹⁵⁴

And that, Vāseṭṭha, is how the ancient primordial term for the 24.3
circle of peasants was created; for those very beings, not others;
for those like them, not unlike; by virtue of principle, not against

152. At DN 3:2.3.11 the brahmins come down from the forest and set up shrines in the town. Chāndogya Upaniṣad 5.10.1–5 compares the forest contemplatives destined for the Brahṃā realm with the ritualists who are reborn on the moon before returning to earth. | The “texts” (*ganthe*) were the Vedas.

153. *Ajjhāyaka* is from *ajjhāyati* (“to recite”), but here it is punned as the negative of *jhāyaka* (“meditator”).

154. “Various” is *visu*, which loosely echoes *vessa* (“peasant”). The Sanskrit form is *vaiśya*, from *viś*, to “stay” or “settle” on the land. They were probably originally peasants who over time transitioned into more diverse livelihoods. In MN 96:10.10 they are said to engage in cattle-rearing and agriculture, and over time trade was added to that.

principle. For principle, Vāsetṭha, is the best thing for people in both this life and the next.

13. The Circle of Menials

- 25.1 The remaining beings lived by venal hunting and minor tasks.
- 25.2 ‘They live by venal hunting and minor tasks’ is the meaning of ‘menial’, the term applied to them.¹⁵⁵
- 25.3 And that, Vāsetṭha, is how the ancient primordial term for the circle of menials was created; for those very beings, not others; for those like them, not unlike; by virtue of principle, not against principle. For principle, Vāsetṭha, is the best thing for people in both this life and the next.
- 26.1 There came a time when an aristocrat,¹⁵⁶ brahmin, peasant, or menial, deprecating their own vocation, went forth from the lay life to homelessness, thinking, ‘I will be an ascetic.’
- 26.7 From these four circles, Vāsetṭha, the circle of ascetics was created; for those very beings, not others; for those like them, not unlike; by virtue of principle, not against principle. For principle, Vāsetṭha, is the best thing for people in both this life and the next.

14. On Bad Conduct

- 27.1 An aristocrat, brahmin, peasant, menial, or ascetic may do bad things by way of body, speech, and mind. They have wrong view, and they act out of that wrong view. And because of that, when

155. *Sudda* (“menial”) rhymes with *ludda* (“hunter”) and *khudda* (“minor”). In MN 96:10.14 their wealth is said to come from the “scythe and flail”, i.e. seasonal manual labor such as threshing grain (SN 35.248:1.2). At MN 96:16.4, bamboo-workers, chariot-makers, and waste-collectors are cited as other low-class jobs. They may have originated as a distinct branch of Aryan peoples who were assimilated into Vedic culture (Ram Sharan Sharma, *Śūdras in Ancient India*, 37).

156. “Vocation” is *dhamma*, which is rarely used in the suttas in this sense; normally it is universal.

their body breaks up, after death, they're reborn in a place of loss, a bad place, the underworld, hell.

An aristocrat, brahmin, peasant, menial, or ascetic may do good things by way of body, speech, and mind. They have right view, and they act out of that right view. And because of that, when their body breaks up, after death, they're reborn in a good place, a heavenly realm. 28.1

An aristocrat, brahmin, peasant, menial, or ascetic may do mixed things by way of body, speech, and mind. They have mixed view, and they act out of that mixed view. And because of that, when their body breaks up, after death, they experience both pleasure and pain. 29.1

15. The Qualities That Lead to Awakening

An aristocrat, brahmin, peasant, menial, or ascetic who is restrained in body, speech, and mind, and develops the seven qualities that lead to awakening, becomes extinguished in this very life. 30.1

Any mendicant from these four classes who is perfected—with defilements ended, who has completed the spiritual journey, done what had to be done, laid down the burden, achieved their own true goal, utterly ended the fetters of rebirth, and is rightly freed through enlightenment—is said to be the foremost by virtue of principle, not against principle. For principle, Vāsetṭha, is the best thing for people in both this life and the next. 31.1

Brahmā Sanāṅkumāra also spoke this verse: 32.1

“The aristocrat is best among people
who take clan as the standard. 32.2

But one accomplished in knowledge and conduct
is first among gods and humans.’

- 32.6 That verse was well sung by Brahmā Sanaṅkumāra, not poorly sung; well spoken, not poorly spoken; beneficial, not harmful, and I agree with it.¹⁵⁷ I also say:
- 32.8 The aristocrat is best among people
who take clan as the standard.
But one accomplished in knowledge and conduct
is first among gods and humans.”
- 32.12 That is what the Buddha said. Satisfied, Vāseṭṭha and Bhāradvāja approved what the Buddha said.

157. The Buddha invokes Brahmā to support his contention that his own caste, the *khattiyas*, were superior, a sequence supported by Pañcaviṁśa Brāhmaṇa 13.4.7. Ultimately, however, the Buddha rejected the notion that caste tells us anything intrinsic about the worth of people.

DN 28

Inspiring Confidence

Sampasādanīyasutta

1. Sāriputta's Lion's Roar

SO I HAVE HEARD. At one time the Buddha was staying near 1.1
Nāḷandā in Pāvārika's mango grove.¹⁵⁸ Then Sāriputta went up to
the Buddha, bowed, sat down to one side, and said to him:

“Sir, I have such confidence in the Buddha that I believe there's 1.4
no other ascetic or brahmin—whether past, future, or present—
whose direct knowledge is superior to the Buddha when it comes
to awakening.”

“That's a grand and dramatic statement, Sāriputta. You've roared 1.5
a definitive, categorical lion's roar, saying: 'I have such confidence
in the Buddha that I believe there's no other ascetic or brahmin—
whether past, future, or present—whose direct knowledge is supe-
rior to the Buddha when it comes to awakening.'”

What about all the perfected ones, the fully awakened Buddhas 1.8
who lived in the past? Have you comprehended their minds to
know that those Buddhas had such ethics, or such qualities, or such
wisdom, or such meditation, or such freedom?”

“No, sir.”

1.10

158. This discourse is expanded from the events of DN 16:1.16.1.

- 1.11 “And what about all the perfected ones, the fully awakened Buddhas who will live in the future? Have you comprehended their minds to know that those Buddhas will have such ethics, or such qualities, or such wisdom, or such meditation, or such freedom?”
- 1.13 “No, sir.”
- 1.14 “And what about me, the perfected one, the fully awakened Buddha at present? Have you comprehended my mind to know that I have such ethics, or such qualities, or such wisdom, or such meditation, or such freedom?”
- 1.16 “No, sir.”
- 1.17 “Well then, Sāriputta, given that you don’t comprehend the minds of Buddhas past, future, or present, what exactly are you doing, making such a grand and dramatic statement, roaring such a definitive, categorical lion’s roar?”
- 2.1 “Sir, though I don’t comprehend the minds of Buddhas past, future, and present, still I understand this by inference from the teaching. Suppose there were a king’s frontier citadel with fortified embankments, ramparts, and arches, and a single gate. And it has a gatekeeper who is astute, competent, and clever. He keeps strangers out and lets known people in. As he walks around the patrol path, he doesn’t see a hole or cleft in the wall, not even one big enough for a cat to slip out. They’d think, ‘Whatever sizable creatures enter or leave the citadel, all of them do so via this gate.’
- 2.8 In the same way, I understand this by inference from the teaching: ‘All the perfected ones, fully awakened Buddhas—whether past, future, or present—give up the five hindrances, corruptions of the heart that weaken wisdom. Their mind is firmly established in the four kinds of mindfulness meditation. They correctly develop the seven awakening factors. And they wake up to the supreme perfect awakening.’
- 2.12 Sir, once I approached the Buddha to listen to the teaching.¹⁵⁹ He explained Dhamma with its higher and higher stages, with its

159. Here the additional material begins. While they are all said to be teachings of the Buddha, some sections cannot be traced in the Pali Canon as

better and better stages, with its dark and bright sides. When I directly knew a certain principle of those teachings, in accordance with how I was taught, I came to a conclusion about the teachings. I had confidence in the Teacher:¹⁶⁰ ‘The Blessed One is a fully awakened Buddha. The teaching is well explained. The Saṅgha is practicing well.’

1.1. Teaching Skillful Qualities

And moreover, sir, how the Buddha teaches skillful qualities is unsurpassable. This consists of such skillful qualities as the four kinds of mindfulness meditation, the four right efforts, the four bases of psychic power, the five faculties, the five powers, the seven awakening factors, and the noble eightfold path.¹⁶¹ By these a mendicant realizes the undefiled freedom of heart and freedom by wisdom in this very life. And they live having realized it with their own insight due to the ending of defilements. This is unsurpassable when it comes to skillful qualities. The Buddha understands this without exception. There is nothing to be understood beyond this whereby another ascetic or brahmin might be superior in direct knowledge to the Buddha when it comes to skillful qualities. 3.1

1.2. Describing the Sense Fields

And moreover, sir, how the Buddha teaches the description of the sense fields is unsurpassable. There are these six interior and exterior sense fields.¹⁶² The eye and sights, the ear and sounds, the nose and smells, the tongue and tastes, the body and touches, and the mind and ideas. This is unsurpassable when it comes to describing the sense fields. The Buddha understands this without 4.1

it stands today. Perhaps Sāriputta was demonstrating his talent for creative rephrasing and synthesis.

160. Perhaps a reference to his enlightenment experience in MN 74.

161. Also at DN 16:3.50.5, etc.

162. The primary source is the SN 35, the Linked Discourses on the Six Sense Fields.

exception. There is nothing to be understood beyond this whereby another ascetic or brahmin might be superior in direct knowledge to the Buddha when it comes to describing the sense fields.

1.3. The Conception of the Embryo

- 5.1 And moreover, sir, how the Buddha teaches the conception of the embryo is unsurpassable. There are these four kinds of conception.
- 5.3 Firstly, someone is unaware when conceived in their mother's womb, unaware as they remain there, and unaware as they emerge. This is the first kind of conception.¹⁶³
- 5.4 Furthermore, someone is aware when conceived in their mother's womb, but unaware as they remain there, and unaware as they emerge. This is the second kind of conception.
- 5.5 Furthermore, someone is aware when conceived in their mother's womb, aware as they remain there, but unaware as they emerge. This is the third kind of conception.
- 5.6 Furthermore, someone is aware when conceived in their mother's womb, aware as they remain there, and aware as they emerge. This is the fourth kind of conception.
- 5.7 This is unsurpassable when it comes to the conception of the embryo.

1.4. Ways of Revealing

- 6.1 And moreover, sir, how the Buddha teaches the different ways of revealing is unsurpassable. There are these four ways of revealing.¹⁶⁴
- 6.3 Firstly, someone reveals by means of a sign, 'This is what you're thinking, such is your thought, and thus is your state of mind.' And even if they reveal this many times, it turns out exactly so, not otherwise. This is the first way of revealing.

163. The Bodhisatta is said elsewhere to be conceived in awareness (eg. DN 16:3.15.1), but this systematic analysis is found only here and at DN 33:1.11.176. It seems like an abrupt shift from central Dhamma topics.

164. Called "demonstrations of revealing" (*ādesanāpāṭihāriya*) at AN 3.60:9.1.

Furthermore, someone reveals after hearing it from humans or non-humans or deities, ‘This is what you’re thinking, such is your thought, and thus is your state of mind.’ And even if they reveal this many times, it turns out exactly so, not otherwise. This is the second way of revealing. 6.7

Furthermore, someone reveals by hearing the sound of thought spreading as someone thinks and considers, ‘This is what you’re thinking, such is your thought, and thus is your state of mind.’ And even if they reveal this many times, it turns out exactly so, not otherwise. This is the third way of revealing. 6.11

Furthermore, someone comprehends the mind of a person who has attained the immersion that’s free of placing the mind and keeping it connected. They understand, ‘Judging by the way this person’s intentions are directed, immediately after this mind state, they’ll think this thought.’ And even if they reveal this many times, it turns out exactly so, not otherwise. This is the fourth way of revealing. 6.15

This is unsurpassable when it comes to the ways of revealing. 6.19

1.5. Attainments of Vision

And moreover, sir, how the Buddha teaches the attainments of vision is unsurpassable. There are these four attainments of vision. 7.1

Firstly, some ascetic or brahmin—by dint of keen, resolute, committed, and diligent effort, and right application of mind—experiences an immersion of the heart of such a kind that they examine their own body up from the soles of the feet and down from the tips of the hairs, wrapped in skin and full of many kinds of filth.¹⁶⁵ ‘In this body there is head hair, body hair, nails, teeth, skin, flesh, sinews, bones, bone marrow, kidneys, heart, liver, diaphragm, 7.3

165. Meditation is described in this way only in MN 136:9.1 and DN 1:1.31.1 where, as here, it is pursued by an “ascetic or brahmin”, who in those cases is not Buddhist. Here, however, it sounds like Sāriputta is talking about a Buddhist practice. The *asubha* contemplation of the parts of the body is described in several places in the canon (eg. DN 22:5.1), but never exactly like this.

spleen, lungs, intestines, mesentery, undigested food, feces, bile, phlegm, pus, blood, sweat, fat, tears, grease, saliva, snot, synovial fluid, urine.’ This is the first attainment of vision.

7.6 Furthermore, some ascetic or brahmin attains that and goes beyond it. They examine a person’s bones with skin, flesh, and blood.¹⁶⁶ This is the second attainment of vision.

7.10 Furthermore, some ascetic or brahmin attains that and goes beyond it. They understand of a person that their stream of consciousness is consistent on both sides: established in both this world and the next.¹⁶⁷ This is the third attainment of vision.

7.15 Furthermore, some ascetic or brahmin attains that and goes beyond it. They understand of a person that their stream of consciousness is consistent on both sides: not established in either this world or the next. This is the fourth attainment of vision.

7.20 This is unsurpassable when it comes to attainments of vision.

1.6. Descriptions of Individuals

8.1 And moreover, sir, how the Buddha teaches the description of individuals is unsurpassable. There are these seven individuals. One freed both ways, one freed by wisdom, a direct witness, one attained to view, one freed by faith, a follower of teachings, a follower by faith.¹⁶⁸ This is unsurpassable when it comes to the description of individuals.

166. The remaining practices are unique to this passage. This is perhaps related to the contemplation of death.

167. This is a unique description of the process of rebirth. Consciousness is a “stream” in that it flows and moves, ever-changing, and is not a static self-same entity. To be “established” (*patitṭhita*) is to be attached because of craving. | The phrase “consistent on both sides” (*ubhayato abbocchinnaṃ*) is unique. *Ubhayato* is used of “both ends” of a pole Ja 533:37.4. I think the sense is that one’s consciousness is consistent with regards to this world and the next. If one is attached to this world, one will be attached to the next, and vice versa in the next section.

168. As at AN 7.14:1.3.

1.7. Kinds of Striving

And moreover, sir, how the Buddha teaches the kinds of striving 9.1
is unsurpassable. There are these seven awakening factors: the
awakening factors of mindfulness, investigation of principles, en-
ergy, rapture, tranquility, immersion, and equanimity.¹⁶⁹ This is
unsurpassable when it comes to the kinds of striving.

1.8. Ways of Practice

And moreover, sir, how the Buddha teaches the ways of practice is 10.1
unsurpassable.¹⁷⁰

1. Painful practice with slow insight,
2. painful practice with swift insight,
3. pleasant practice with slow insight, and
4. pleasant practice with swift insight.

Of these, the painful practice with slow insight is said to be 10.6
inferior both ways: because it's painful and because it's slow. The
painful practice with swift insight is said to be inferior because it's
painful. The pleasant practice with slow insight is said to be inferior
because it's slow. But the pleasant practice with swift insight is said
to be superior both ways: because it's pleasant and because it's
swift.

This is unsurpassable when it comes to the ways of practice. 10.10

1.9. Behavior in Speech

And moreover, sir, how the Buddha teaches behavior in speech is 11.1
unsurpassable. It's when someone doesn't use speech that's con-
nected with lying, or divisive, or backbiting, or aggressively trying

169. Normally we would expect the four kinds of right striving here. This is
the only place the seven awakening factors are described in this way.

170. As at AN 4.166.

to win.¹⁷¹ They speak only wise counsel, valuable and timely. This is unsurpassable when it comes to behavior in speech.

- 12.1 And moreover, sir, how the Buddha teaches a person's ethical behavior is unsurpassable.¹⁷² It's when someone is honest and faithful. They don't use deceit, flattery, hinting, or belittling, and they don't use material possessions to chase after other material possessions. They guard the sense doors and eat in moderation. They're fair, dedicated to wakefulness, tireless, energetic, and meditative. They have good memory, eloquence, range, retention, and thoughtfulness. They're not greedy for sensual pleasures. They are mindful and alert.¹⁷³ This is unsurpassable when it comes to a person's ethical behavior.

1.10. Responsiveness to Instruction

- 13.1 And moreover, sir, how the Buddha teaches the different degrees of responsiveness to instruction is unsurpassable. There are these four degrees of responsiveness to instruction.¹⁷⁴
- 13.3 The Buddha knows by rationally applying the mind to another individual:¹⁷⁵ 'By practicing as instructed this individual will, with the ending of three fetters, become a stream-enterer, not liable to be reborn in the underworld, bound for awakening.' The Buddha knows by rationally applying the mind to another individual: 'By practicing as instructed this individual will, with the ending of three fetters, and the weakening of greed, hate, and delusion,

171. These descriptions are unique. | *Vebhūtiya* is only used here and DN 30, where the context shows it is a synonym for *pesuṇiya*.

172. The Mahāsaṅgīti omits a heading for this section.

173. The sequence from "memory" (*satimā*) to "retention" (*dhitimā*) is related to the good qualities of Ānanda (AN 1.220:1.1), and pertain to textual fluency. *Satimā* here is "memory", not "mindfulness", which is *sato* at the end.

174. We don't find this exact passage elsewhere, but it is similar to AN 10.46. When the Buddha speaks of future consequences it is conditional. He is not a fortune-teller, but he understands the results of the practice.

175. *Paccattam yonisomanasikārā* occurs at SN 46.8:2.1 and MN 50:3.1, where it means "investigate inside oneself". Here it is applied to another.

become a once-returner. They will come back to this world once only, then make an end of suffering.’ The Buddha knows by rationally applying the mind to another individual: ‘By practicing as instructed this individual will, with the ending of the five lower fetters, be reborn spontaneously. They will be extinguished there, and are not liable to return from that world.’ The Buddha knows by rationally applying the mind to another individual: ‘By practicing as instructed this individual will realize the undefiled freedom of heart and freedom by wisdom in this very life, and live having realized it with their own insight due to the ending of defilements.’

This is unsurpassable when it comes to the different degrees of responsiveness to instruction. 13.11

1.11. The Knowledge and Freedom of Others

And moreover, sir, how the Buddha teaches the knowledge and freedom of other individuals is unsurpassable.¹⁷⁶ The Buddha knows by rationally applying the mind to another individual: ‘With the ending of three fetters this individual will become a stream-enterer, not liable to be reborn in the underworld, bound for awakening.’ The Buddha knows by rationally applying the mind to another individual: ‘With the ending of three fetters, and the weakening of greed, hate, and delusion, this individual will become a once-returner. They will come back to this world once only, then make an end of suffering.’ The Buddha knows by rationally applying the mind to another individual: ‘With the ending of the five lower fetters, this individual will be reborn spontaneously. They will be extinguished there, and are not liable to return from that world.’ The Buddha knows by rationally applying the mind to another individual: ‘This individual will realize the undefiled freedom of heart and freedom by wisdom in this very life, and live having realized it with their own insight due to the ending of defilements.’ This 14.1

176. Another unique passage, similar to MN 68:12.4.

is unsurpassable when it comes to the knowledge and freedom of other individuals.

1.12. Eternalism

15.1 And moreover, sir, how the Buddha teaches eternalist doctrines is unsurpassable. There are these three eternalist doctrines.¹⁷⁷

15.3 Firstly, some ascetic or brahmin—by dint of keen, resolute, committed, and diligent effort, and right application of mind—experiences an immersion of the heart of such a kind that they recollect many hundreds of thousands of past lives, with features and details. They say, ‘I know that in the past the cosmos expanded or contracted. I don’t know whether in the future the cosmos will expand or contract.’¹⁷⁸ The self and the cosmos are eternal, barren, steady as a mountain peak, standing firm like a pillar. They remain the same for all eternity, while these sentient beings wander and transmigrate and pass away and rearise.’ This is the first eternalist doctrine.

15.10 Furthermore, some ascetic or brahmin—by dint of keen, resolute, committed, and diligent effort, and right application of mind—experiences an immersion of the heart of such a kind that they recollect their past lives for as many as ten eons of the expansion and contraction of the cosmos,¹⁷⁹ with features and details. They say, ‘I know that in the past the cosmos expanded or contracted. I don’t know whether in the future the cosmos will expand or contract. The self and the cosmos are eternal, barren, steady as a mountain peak, standing firm like a pillar. They re-

177. Compare the four kinds of eternalism at DN 1:3.1.1. The theories based on rationality are omitted.

178. According to the PTS edition, the Sinhala-script manuscripts read *na jānāmi* (“don’t know”) against the Mahāsaṅgīti *jānāmi*. | The means of knowledge given here is solely based on the recollection of past lives, which agrees with the Brahmajālasutta that these are views based on the past. It seems the sectarian here is admitting the limits of their experiential knowledge, but nonetheless inferring eternalism in both past and future.

179. Some manuscripts read “twenty” here.

main the same for all eternity, while these sentient beings wander and transmigrate and pass away and rearise.’ This is the second eternalist doctrine.

Furthermore, some ascetic or brahmin—by dint of keen, resolute, committed, and diligent effort, and right application of mind—experiences an immersion of the heart of such a kind that they recollect their past lives for as many as forty eons of the expansion and contraction of the cosmos, with features and details. They say, ‘I know that in the past the cosmos expanded or contracted. I don’t know whether in the future the cosmos will expand or contract. The self and the cosmos are eternal, barren, steady as a mountain peak, standing firm like a pillar. They remain the same for all eternity, while these sentient beings wander and transmigrate and pass away and rearise.’ This is the third eternalist doctrine.

This is unsurpassable when it comes to eternalist doctrines. 15.26

1.13. Recollecting Past Lives

And moreover, sir, how the Buddha teaches the knowledge of recollecting past lives is unsurpassable. It’s when some ascetic or brahmin—by dint of keen, resolute, committed, and diligent effort, and right application of mind—experiences an immersion of the heart of such a kind that they recollect their many kinds of past lives. That is: one, two, three, four, five, ten, twenty, thirty, forty, fifty, a hundred, a thousand, a hundred thousand rebirths; many eons of the world contracting, many eons of the world expanding, many eons of the world contracting and expanding. They remember: ‘There, I was named this, my clan was that, I looked like this, and that was my food. This was how I felt pleasure and pain, and that was how my life ended. When I passed away from that place I was reborn somewhere else. There, too, I was named this, my clan was that, I looked like this, and that was my food. This was how I felt pleasure and pain, and that was how my life ended. When I passed away from that place I was reborn here.’ And so they recollect their many kinds of past lives, with features and details. Sir, there are 16.1

gods whose life span cannot be reckoned or calculated. Still, no matter what incarnation they have previously been reborn in—whether physical or formless or percipient or non-percipient or neither percipient nor non-percipient—they recollect their many kinds of past lives, with features and details. This is unsurpassable when it comes to the knowledge of recollecting past lives.

1.14. Death and Rebirth

- 17.1 And moreover, sir, how the Buddha teaches the knowledge of the death and rebirth of sentient beings is unsurpassable. It's when some ascetic or brahmin—by dint of keen, resolute, committed, and diligent effort, and right application of mind—experiences an immersion of the heart of such a kind that with clairvoyance that is purified and superhuman, they see sentient beings passing away and being reborn— inferior and superior, beautiful and ugly, in a good place or a bad place. They understand how sentient beings are reborn according to their deeds: 'These dear beings did bad things by way of body, speech, and mind. They spoke ill of the noble ones; they had wrong view; and they chose to act out of that wrong view. When their body breaks up, after death, they're reborn in a place of loss, a bad place, the underworld, hell. These dear beings, however, did good things by way of body, speech, and mind. They never spoke ill of the noble ones; they had right view; and they chose to act out of that right view. When their body breaks up, after death, they're reborn in a good place, a heavenly realm.' And so, with clairvoyance that is purified and superhuman, they see sentient beings passing away and being reborn—inferior and superior, beautiful and ugly, in a good place or a bad place. They understand how sentient beings are reborn according to their deeds. This is unsurpassable when it comes to the knowledge of death and rebirth.

1.15. Psychic Powers

And moreover, sir, how the Buddha teaches psychic power is unsurpassable. There are these two kinds of psychic power. There are psychic powers that are accompanied by defilements and attachments, and are said to be ignoble.¹⁸⁰ And there are psychic powers that are free of defilements and attachments, and are said to be noble. What are the psychic powers that are accompanied by defilements and attachments, and are said to be ignoble? It's when some ascetic or brahmin—by dint of keen, resolute, committed, and diligent effort, and right application of mind—experiences an immersion of the heart of such a kind that they wield the many kinds of psychic power: multiplying themselves and becoming one again; appearing and disappearing; going unimpeded through a wall, a rampart, or a mountain as if through space; diving in and out of the earth as if it were water; walking on water as if it were earth; flying cross-legged through the sky like a bird; touching and stroking with the hand the sun and moon, so mighty and powerful; controlling the body as far as the Brahmā realm. These are the psychic powers that are accompanied by defilements and attachments, and are said to be ignoble. 18.1

But what are the psychic powers that are free of defilements and attachments, and are said to be noble? It's when, if a mendicant wishes: 'May I meditate perceiving the unrepulsive in the repulsive,' that's what they do.¹⁸¹ If they wish: 'May I meditate perceiving the repulsive in the unrepulsive,' that's what they do. If they wish: 'May I meditate perceiving the unrepulsive in the repulsive and the unrepulsive,' that's what they do. If they wish: 'May I meditate perceiving the repulsive in the unrepulsive and the repulsive,' that's what they do. If they wish: 'May I meditate staying equanimous, 18.9

180. "Accompanied by defilements and attachments" (*sāsavā saupadhikā*) is unique, but compare *sāsavā puññabhāgiyā upadhivepakkā* at MN 117:6.3 and *sāsavaṃ upādāniyaṃ* at SN 22.48:2.2.

181. Also at MN 152:11–15.3, AN 5.144:2.2, SN 52.1:4.2, SN 46.54:12.5, SN 54.8:7.1.

mindful and aware, rejecting both the repulsive and the unrepulsive,¹⁸² that's what they do. These are the psychic powers that are free of defilements and attachments, and are said to be noble. This is unsurpassable when it comes to psychic powers. The Buddha understands this without exception. There is nothing to be understood beyond this whereby another ascetic or brahmin might be superior in direct knowledge to the Buddha when it comes to psychic powers.

1.16. The Four Absorptions

- 19.1 The Buddha has achieved what should be achieved by a faithful gentleman by being energetic and strong, by human strength, energy, vigor, and exertion. The Buddha doesn't indulge in sensual pleasures, which are low, crude, ordinary, ignoble, and pointless. And he doesn't indulge in self-mortification, which is painful, ignoble, and pointless.¹⁸² He gets the four absorptions—blissful meditations in the present life that belong to the higher mind—when he wants, without trouble or difficulty.¹⁸³

1.17. On Being Questioned

- 19.5 Sir, if they were to ask me, 'Reverend Sāriputta, is there any other ascetic or brahmin—whether past, future, or present—whose direct knowledge is superior to the Buddha when it comes to awakening?' I would tell them 'No.'
- 19.9 But if they were to ask me, 'Reverend Sāriputta, is there any other ascetic or brahmin—whether past or future—whose direct knowledge is equal to the Buddha when it comes to awakening?' I would tell them 'Yes.' But if they were to ask: 'Reverend Sāriputta, is there any other ascetic or brahmin at present whose direct

182. From the first sermon at SN 56.11:2.3.

183. Here the jhānas stand in the place of the path as a whole. In DN 29:24.5 the Buddha uses a similar framing.

knowledge is equal to the Buddha when it comes to awakening?’ I would tell them ‘No.’

But if they were to ask me, ‘But why does Venerable Sāriputta 19.13 grant this in respect of some but not others?’ I would answer them like this,¹⁸⁴ ‘Reverends, I have heard and learned this in the presence of the Buddha: “The perfected ones, fully awakened Buddhas of the past were equal in awakening to myself.”¹⁸⁵ And I have heard and learned this in the presence of the Buddha: “The perfected ones, fully awakened Buddhas of the future will be equal in awakening to myself.” And I have also heard and learned this in the presence of the Buddha: “It’s impossible for two perfected ones, fully awakened Buddhas to arise in the same solar system at the same time.”’¹⁸⁶

Answering this way, I trust that I repeated what the Buddha 19.21 has said, and didn’t misrepresent him with an untruth. I trust my explanation was in line with the teaching, and that there are no legitimate grounds for rebuke or criticism.”

“Indeed, Sāriputta, in answering this way you repeat what I’ve 19.22 said, and don’t misrepresent me with an untruth. Your explanation is in line with the teaching, and there are no legitimate grounds for rebuke or criticism.”

2. Incredible and Amazing

When he had spoken, Venerable Udāyī said to the Buddha,¹⁸⁷ “It’s 20.1 incredible, sir, it’s amazing! The Realized One has so few wishes, such contentment, such self-effacement! For even though the Realized One has such power and might, he will not make a display of himself. If the wanderers following other religions were to see even a single one of these qualities in themselves they’d carry around a

184. Here *abhi-* in *abbhanujānāti* conveys the sense “grant in respect of one”.

185. Here Sāriputta is quoting the Buddha, yet this phrase is not found in the Pali Canon.

186. At MN 115:14.1.

187. There are several individuals called Udāyī.

banner to that effect. It's incredible, sir, it's amazing! The Realized One has so few wishes, such contentment, such self-effacement! For even though the Realized One has such power and might, he will not make a display of himself."

- 20.7 "See, Udāyī, how the Realized One has so few wishes, such contentment, such self-effacement. For even though the Realized One has such power and might, he will not make a display of himself. If the wanderers following other religions were to see even a single one of these qualities in themselves they'd carry around a banner to that effect. See, Udāyī, how the Realized One has so few wishes, such contentment, such self-effacement. For even though the Realized One has such power and might, he will not make a display of himself."
- 21.1 Then the Buddha said to Venerable Sāriputta, "So Sāriputta, you should frequently speak this exposition of the teaching to the monks, nuns, laymen, and laywomen. Though there will be some foolish people who have doubt or uncertainty regarding the Realized One, when they hear this exposition of the teaching they'll give up that doubt or uncertainty."
- 21.4 That's how Venerable Sāriputta declared his confidence in the Buddha's presence. And that's why the name of this discussion is "Inspiring Confidence".

DN 29

An Impressive Discourse

Pāsādikasutta

SO I HAVE HEARD. At one time the Buddha was staying in the 1.1
land of the Sakyans in a stilt longhouse in a mango grove belonging
to the Sakyans named Vedhaññā.¹⁸⁸

Now at that time the Jain ascetic of the Ñātika clan had recently 1.3
passed away at Pāvā.¹⁸⁹ With his passing the Jain ascetics split,

188. The Vedhaññās are not mentioned elsewhere; their name means “Marksmen”.

189. When this event is mentioned at MN 104:2.1 the Buddha is also in the Sakyan lands, but near the village of Sāma. Both texts tell the story of Cunda conveying the news via Ānanda at Sāma, which was presumably near the Vedhaññā’s mango grove. It does seem strange that two distinct discourses are recorded from the same prompt, but then, why shouldn’t the Buddha give more than one teaching on such an important topic? At DN 33:1.6.1 the Buddha is at Pāvā in the Mallian lands, and the discourse is spoken by Sāriputta there. Given the evident lateness of DN 33, this is a less convincing framework. A parallel to MN 104 (MĀ 196 at T I 752c12) says he was in the Vajjian lands at the time; both Sakya and Vajji border on Mallā. Jain tradition holds Mahāvīra died after the Buddha, and it was at a different Pāvā in Magadha near Nālandā, perhaps the place known in Pali as Pāvārika’s mango grove (DN 11:1.2). The earliest Jain source for Mahāvīra’s death, the Kalpasutra, is, however, much later than the Buddhist sources, and does not say where Pāvā is. But it does say the events were commemorated by the rulers of Kāśī and Kosala, and the Mallians and the Licchavis. The absence of Magadha and the presence of Malla sit better with the location of Pāvā in Malla rather than Magadha.

dividing into two factions, arguing, quarreling, and disputing, continually wounding each other with barbed words:

- 1.5 “You don’t understand this teaching and training. I understand this teaching and training. What, you understand this teaching and training? You’re practicing wrong. I’m practicing right. I stay on topic, you don’t. You said last what you should have said first. You said first what you should have said last. What you’ve thought so much about has been disproved. Your doctrine is refuted. Go on, save your doctrine! You’re trapped; get yourself out of this—if you can!”
- 1.6 You’d think there was nothing but slaughter going on among the Jain ascetics.¹⁹⁰ And the Jain Nātika’s white-clothed lay disciples were disillusioned, dismayed, and disappointed in the Jain ascetics. They were equally disappointed with a teaching and training so poorly explained and poorly propounded, not emancipating, not leading to peace, proclaimed by someone who is not a fully awakened Buddha, with broken monument and without a refuge.¹⁹¹
- 2.1 And then, after completing the rainy season residence near Pāvā, the novice Cunda went to see Venerable Ānanda at Sāma village. He bowed, sat down to one side, and told him what had happened.¹⁹²
- 2.4 Ānanda said to him, “Reverend Cunda, we should see the Buddha about this matter. Come, let’s go to the Buddha and tell him about this.”
- 2.7 “Yes, sir,” replied Cunda.

190. A sardonic slight on the movement whose signature virtue was non-violence.

191. “With broken monument” (*bhinnathupe*) is used only in this context. When a great teacher or leader died, a “monument” was built to keep their memory alive. The breaking of a monument—whether physical or symbolic—was, in a way, truly killing them.

192. Apart from the events described here, we hear of Sāma only once (AN 6.21). The topic there is the decline of the Saṅgha, hinting at a connection with these events. Cunda took the time to complete his rains residence before conveying the news, which conveys something of the speed with which news traveled in those days—slowly.

Then Ānanda and Cunda went to the Buddha, bowed, sat down 3.1
to one side, and told him what had happened.

1. The Teaching of the Unawakened

“That’s what happens, Cunda, when a teaching and training is poorly 4.1
explained and poorly propounded, not emancipating, not leading
to peace, proclaimed by someone who is not a fully awakened
Buddha.¹⁹³

Take the case where a teacher is not awakened, and the teaching 4.2
is poorly explained and poorly propounded, not emancipating,
not leading to peace, proclaimed by someone who is not a fully
awakened Buddha. A disciple in that teaching does not practice in
line with the teachings, does not practice following that procedure,
does not live in line with the teaching. They proceed having turned
away from that teaching. You should say this to them, ‘You’re for-
tunate, reverend, you’re so very fortunate! For your teacher is not
awakened, and their teaching is poorly explained and poorly pro-
pounded, not emancipating, not leading to peace, proclaimed by
someone who is not a fully awakened Buddha. But you don’t prac-
tice in line with that teaching, you don’t practice following that
procedure, you don’t live in line with the teaching. You proceed
having turned away from that teaching.’ In such a case the teacher
and the teaching are to blame, but the disciple deserves praise.¹⁹⁴
Suppose someone was to say to such a disciple, ‘Come on, ven-
erable, practice as taught and pointed out by your teacher.’ The
one who encourages, the one who they encourage, and the one
who practices accordingly all create much wickedness.¹⁹⁵ Why is
that? It’s because that teaching and training is poorly explained

193. This harsh critique is repeated at MN 104:2.5 and DN 33:1.6.5.

194. The Dhamma is primary, not the teacher. This is applied to Buddhism as well; for example, a student is expected to help a mentor who is falling away from Dhamma (Kd 1:25.20.1).

195. Compare AN 1.320.

and poorly propounded, not emancipating, not leading to peace, proclaimed by someone who is not a fully awakened Buddha.

- 5.1 Take the case where a teacher is not awakened, and the teaching is poorly explained and poorly propounded, not emancipating, not leading to peace, proclaimed by someone who is not a fully awakened Buddha. A disciple in that teaching practices in line with the teachings, practices following that procedure, lives in line with the teaching. They proceed having undertaken that teaching. You should say this to them, ‘It’s your loss, reverend, it’s your misfortune! For your teacher is not awakened, and their teaching is poorly explained and poorly propounded, not emancipating, not leading to peace, proclaimed by someone who is not a fully awakened Buddha. And you practice in line with that teaching, you practice following that procedure, you live in line with the teaching. You proceed having undertaken that teaching.’ In such a case the teacher, the teaching, and the disciple are all to blame. Suppose someone was to say to such a disciple, ‘Clearly the venerable is practicing systematically and will succeed in that system.’ The one who praises, the one who they praise, and the one who, being praised, rouses up even more energy all create much wickedness. Why is that? It’s because that teaching and training is poorly explained and poorly propounded, not emancipating, not leading to peace, proclaimed by someone who is not a fully awakened Buddha.

2. The Teaching of the Awakened

- 6.1 Take the case where a teacher is awakened, and the teaching is well explained and well propounded, emancipating, leading to peace, proclaimed by someone who is a fully awakened Buddha. A disciple in that teaching does not practice in line with the teachings, does not practice following that procedure, does not live in line with the teaching. They proceed having turned away from that teaching. You should say this to them, ‘It’s your loss, reverend, it’s your misfortune! For your teacher is awakened, and their teaching

is well explained and well propounded, emancipating, leading to peace, proclaimed by someone who is a fully awakened Buddha. But you don't practice in line with that teaching, you don't practice following that procedure, you don't live in line with the teaching. You proceed having turned away from that teaching.' In such a case the teacher and the teaching deserve praise, but the disciple is to blame. Suppose someone was to say to such a disciple, 'Come on, venerable, practice as taught and pointed out by your teacher.' The one who encourages, the one who they encourage, and the one who practices accordingly all create much merit. Why is that? It's because that teaching and training is well explained and well propounded, emancipating, leading to peace, proclaimed by someone who is a fully awakened Buddha.

Take the case where a teacher is awakened, and the teaching 7.1
is well explained and well propounded, emancipating, leading to peace, proclaimed by someone who is a fully awakened Buddha. A disciple in that teaching practices in line with the teachings, practices following that procedure, lives in line with the teaching. They proceed having undertaken that teaching. You should say this to them, 'You're fortunate, reverend, you're so very fortunate! For your teacher is awakened, and their teaching is well explained and well propounded, emancipating, leading to peace, proclaimed by someone who is a fully awakened Buddha. And you practice in line with that teaching, you practice following that procedure, you live in line with the teaching. You proceed having undertaken that teaching.' In such a case the teacher, the teaching, and the disciple all deserve praise. Suppose someone was to say to such a disciple, 'Clearly the venerable is practicing systematically and will succeed in that system.' The one who praises, the one who they praise, and the one who, being praised, rouses up even more energy all create much merit. Why is that? It's because that teaching and training is well explained and well propounded, emancipating, leading to peace, proclaimed by someone who is a fully awakened Buddha.

3. When Disciples Have Regrets

- 8.1 Take the case where a teacher arises in the world who is perfected, a fully awakened Buddha. The teaching is well explained and well propounded, emancipating, leading to peace, proclaimed by someone who is fully awakened. But the disciples have not been educated in the meaning of that good teaching. And the spiritual practice that's entirely full and pure has not been disclosed and revealed to them; its sayings have not all been collected; and it has not been well proclaimed with its demonstrable basis wherever there are gods and humans.¹⁹⁶ And then their teacher passes away. When such a teacher has passed away the disciples are tormented by regrets. Why is that? They think: 'Our teacher was perfected, a fully awakened Buddha. His teaching was well explained, but we were not educated in its meaning. And the spiritual practice was not fully disclosed and revealed to us; its sayings have not all been collected; and it has not been well proclaimed with its demonstrable basis wherever there are gods and humans. And then our teacher passed away.' When such a teacher has passed away the disciples are tormented by regrets.

4. When Disciples Have No Regrets

- 9.1 Take the case where a teacher arises in the world who is perfected, a fully awakened Buddha. The teaching is well explained and well propounded, emancipating, leading to peace, proclaimed by someone who is fully awakened. The disciples have been educated in the meaning of that good teaching. And the spiritual practice that's entirely full and pure has been disclosed and revealed to them; its sayings have all been collected; and it has been well proclaimed with its demonstrable basis wherever there are gods and humans.

196. "Collected sayings" is *saṅgāhapada*. This is a unique term, but the sense seems to be that the process of gathering and organizing teachings is incomplete. I take the negative *na* to be distributed separately among the clauses.

And then their teacher passes away. When such a teacher has passed away the disciples are free of regrets. Why is that? They think: ‘Our teacher was perfected, a fully awakened Buddha. His teaching was well explained, we were educated in its meaning, and the spiritual practice was fully disclosed to us. And then our teacher passed away.’ When such a teacher has passed away the disciples are free of regrets.

5. On the Incomplete Spiritual Path, Etc.

Now suppose, Cunda, that a spiritual path possesses those factors. But the teacher is not senior, long standing, long gone forth, advanced in years, and reached the final stage of life. Then that spiritual path is incomplete in that respect. 10.1

But when a spiritual path possesses those factors and the teacher is senior, then that spiritual path is complete in that respect. 10.3

Now suppose that a spiritual path possesses those factors and the teacher is senior. But there are no senior monk disciples who are competent, educated, assured, have attained sanctuary from the yoke,¹⁹⁷ who can rightly explain the true teaching, and who can legitimately and completely refute the doctrines of others that come up, and teach with a demonstrable basis. Then that spiritual path is incomplete in that respect. 11.1

But when a spiritual path possesses those factors and the teacher is senior and there are competent senior monks, then that spiritual path is complete in that respect. 12.1

Now suppose that a spiritual path possesses those factors and the teacher is senior and there are competent senior monks. But there are no competent middle monks, junior monks, senior nuns, middle nuns, junior nuns, celibate white-clothed laymen, white-clothed laymen enjoying sensual pleasures, celibate white-clothed laywomen, white-clothed laywomen enjoying sensual pleasures. ... There are white-clothed laywomen enjoying sensual pleasures, 12.4

197. Compare DN 16:3.8.4ff.

but the spiritual path is not successful and prosperous, extensive, popular, widespread, and well proclaimed wherever there are gods and humans ... the spiritual path is successful and prosperous, extensive, popular, widespread, and well proclaimed wherever there are gods and humans, but it has not reached the peak of material possessions and fame. Then that spiritual path is incomplete in that respect.

13.1 But when a spiritual path possesses those factors and the teacher is senior and there are competent senior monks, middle monks, junior monks, senior nuns, middle nuns, junior nuns, celibate laymen, laymen enjoying sensual pleasures, celibate laywomen, laywomen enjoying sensual pleasures, and the spiritual path is successful and prosperous, extensive, popular, widespread, and well proclaimed wherever there are gods and humans, and it has reached the peak of material possessions and fame, then that spiritual path is complete in that respect.

14.1 I, Cunda, am a teacher who has arisen in the world today, perfected and fully awakened. The teaching is well explained and well propounded, emancipating, leading to peace, proclaimed by someone who is fully awakened. My disciples have been educated in the meaning of that good teaching. And the spiritual practice that's entirely full and pure has been disclosed and revealed to them with all its collected sayings, with its demonstrable basis, well proclaimed wherever there are gods and humans. I am a teacher today who is senior, long standing, long gone forth, advanced in years, and have reached the final stage of life.

15.1 I have today disciples who are competent senior monks, middle monks, junior monks, senior nuns, middle nuns, junior nuns, celibate laymen, laymen enjoying sensual pleasures, celibate laywomen, and laywomen enjoying sensual pleasures. Today my spiritual path is successful and prosperous, extensive, popular, widespread, and well proclaimed wherever there are gods and humans.

Of all the teachers in the world today, Cunda, I don't see even a 16.1
single one who has reached the peak of material possessions and
fame like me. Of all the spiritual communities and groups in the
world today, Cunda, I don't see even a single one who has reached
the pinnacle of material possessions and fame like the mendicant
Saṅgha. And if there's any spiritual path of which it may be rightly
said that it's endowed with all good qualities, complete in all good
qualities, neither too little nor too much, well explained, whole,
full, and well propounded, it's of this spiritual path that this should
be said.

Uddaka son of Rāma used to say:¹⁹⁸ 'Seeing, one does not see.' 16.8
But seeing what does one not see? You can see the blade of a well-
sharpened razor, but not the edge.¹⁹⁹ Thus it is said: 'Seeing, one
does not see.'²⁰⁰ But that saying of Uddaka's is low, crude, ordinary,
ignoble, and pointless, as it's only about a razor. If there's anything
of which it may be rightly said: 'Seeing, one does not see,' it's of
this that it should be said. Seeing what does one not see? One sees
this: a spiritual path endowed with all good qualities, complete in
all good qualities, neither too little nor too much, well explained,
whole, full, and well propounded. One does not see this: anything
that, were it to be removed, would make it purer. One does not
see this: anything that, were it to be added, would make it more
complete. Thus it is rightly said: 'Seeing, one does not see.'

198. One of the Brahmanical sages under whom the Bodhisatta practiced before awakening (MN 26:16.1). Another of his enigmatic sayings is found at SN 35.103:1.2. When the Bodhisatta began his study, he first learned to recite the scriptures, and in these two passages we find examples of what those scriptures were.

199. Sharp razors were known even in Vedic times (Rig Veda 8.4.16).

200. This is a distorted reference to Bṛhadāraṇyaka Upaniṣad 1.4.7. There, the Self is said to be hidden in a body like a razor in its case. People do not see it (*taṁ na paśyanti*), for they only see the partial and incomplete functions of the Self, such as breathing, speaking, and so on. Seeing only the aspects, they do not see that each aspect is an expression of the one whole. This confirms that Uddaka was a Brahmanical teacher who was familiar with this passage. Similar phrases, but without the razor simile, are found at Bṛhadāraṇyaka Upaniṣad 4.3.23 and Chāndogya Upaniṣad 6.12.1.

6. Teachings Should be Recited in Concert

- 17.1 So, Cunda, you should all come together and recite in concert, without disputing, those things I have taught you from my direct knowledge, comparing meaning with meaning and phrasing with phrasing, so that this spiritual path may last for a long time. That would be for the welfare and happiness of the people, out of compassion for the world, for the benefit, welfare, and happiness of gods and humans.²⁰¹ And what are those things I have taught from my direct knowledge? They are the four kinds of mindfulness meditation, the four right efforts, the four bases of psychic power, the five faculties, the five powers, the seven awakening factors, and the noble eightfold path.²⁰² These are the things I have taught from my own direct knowledge.

7. Reaching Agreement

- 18.1 Suppose one of those spiritual companions who is training in harmony and mutual appreciation, without disputing, were to recite the teaching in the Saṅgha. Now, you might think, ‘This venerable misconstrues the meaning and mistakes the phrasing.’ You should neither approve nor dismiss them, but say,²⁰³ ‘Reverend, if this is the meaning, the phrasing may either be this or that: which is more fitting? And if this is the phrasing, the meaning may be either

201. “Recite in concert” is *saṅgīti*. Reciting together affirms the mutual teaching and ensures the correctness of the text. The implication is that the entire Buddhist community participates, but in the *saṅgīti* after the Buddha’s death there were only monks.

202. Here the Buddha outlines the topics to be recited, which are the main chapters of the Saṃyutta Nikāya.

203. The “meaning” is the *attha*. Here we see the source of the *atthakathā*, which we translate as “commentaries”, but which are literally “discussions on the meaning”. Such discussions are undertaken through a civil and polite inquiry.

this or that: which is more fitting?’²⁰⁴ Suppose they reply, ‘This phrasing fits the meaning better than that. And this meaning fits the phrasing better than that.’ Without flattering or rebuking them, you should carefully convince them by examining that meaning and that phrasing.

Suppose another spiritual companion were to recite the teaching 19.1
in the Saṅgha. Now, you might think, ‘This venerable misconstrues the meaning but gets the phrasing right.’ You should neither approve nor dismiss them, but say, ‘Reverend, if this is the phrasing, the meaning may be either this or that: which is more fitting?’ Suppose they reply, ‘This meaning fits the phrasing better than that.’ Without flattering or rebuking, you should carefully convince them by examining that meaning.

Suppose another spiritual companion were to recite the teaching 20.1
in the Saṅgha. Now, you might think, ‘This venerable construes the meaning correctly but mistakes the phrasing.’ You should neither approve nor dismiss them, but say, ‘Reverend, if this is the meaning, the phrasing may be either this or that: which is more fitting?’ Suppose they reply, ‘This phrasing fits the meaning better than that.’ Without flattering or rebuking, you should carefully convince them by examining that phrasing.

Suppose another spiritual companion were to recite the teaching 21.1
in the Saṅgha. Now, you might think, ‘This venerable construes the meaning correctly and gets the phrasing right.’ Saying ‘Good!’ you should applaud and cheer that mendicant’s statement, and then say to them, ‘We are fortunate, reverend, so very fortunate to see a venerable such as yourself, so well-versed in the meaning and the phrasing, as one of our spiritual companions!’

204. Meaning and phrasing are interdependent, so care must be taken with both. Often it happens that when the phrasing slips, a new and unwarranted meaning is imputed.

8. The Reasons for Allowing Requisites

- 22.1 Cunda, I do not teach you solely for restraining defilements that affect the present life. Nor do I teach solely for protecting against defilements that affect lives to come. I teach both for restraining defilements that affect the present life and protecting against defilements that affect lives to come.
- 22.5 And that's why I have allowed robes for you that suffice²⁰⁵ only for the sake of warding off cold and heat; for warding off the touch of flies, mosquitoes, wind, sun, and reptiles; and for covering up the private parts. I have allowed almsfood for you that suffices only to sustain this body, avoid harm, and support spiritual practice; so that you will put an end to old discomfort and not give rise to new discomfort, and will keep on living blamelessly and at ease. I have allowed lodgings for you that suffice only for the sake of warding off cold and heat; for warding off the touch of flies, mosquitoes, wind, sun, and reptiles; to shelter from harsh weather and to enjoy retreat. I have allowed medicines and supplies for the sick for you that suffice only for the sake of warding off the pains of illness and to promote good health.

9. Indulgence in Pleasure

- 23.1 It's possible that wanderers of other religions might say, 'The ascetics who follow the Sakyan live indulging in pleasure.'²⁰⁶ You should say to them, 'What is that indulgence in pleasure? For there are many different kinds of indulgence in pleasure.'

205. These are the four basic requisites for monastics, said to overcome defilements by usage (AN 6.58:4.1, MN 2:13.1).

206. This repurposes the phrase used right at the beginning of the Buddha's first teaching, the Dhammacakkappavattasutta (SN 56.11:2.3). There he was persuading hard-bitten ascetics that he did not indulge in sensual pleasures. While the affiliation of those five ascetics is not stated explicitly, clearly their practices were similar to the Jains. And given the context, no doubt the Buddha has the Jains in mind here.

These four kinds of indulgence in pleasure, Cunda, are low, 23.6
crude, ordinary, ignoble, and pointless. They don't lead to dis-
illusionment, dispassion, cessation, peace, insight, awakening, and
extinguishment. What four?

It's when some fool makes themselves happy and pleased by 23.8
killing living creatures. This is the first kind of indulgence in plea-
sure.

Furthermore, someone makes themselves happy and pleased 23.10
by theft. This is the second kind of indulgence in pleasure.

Furthermore, someone makes themselves happy and pleased 23.12
by lying. This is the third kind of indulgence in pleasure.

Furthermore, someone amuses themselves, supplied and pro- 23.14
vided with the five kinds of sensual stimulation. This is the fourth
kind of indulgence in pleasure.

These are the four kinds of indulgence in pleasure that are low, 23.16
crude, ordinary, ignoble, and pointless. They don't lead to disil-
lusionment, dispassion, cessation, peace, insight, awakening, and
extinguishment.

It's possible that wanderers of other religions might say, 'The 24.1
ascetics who follow the Sakyan live indulging in pleasure in these
four ways.' They should be told, 'Not so!' It isn't right to say that
about you; it misrepresents you with an untruth.

Cunda, these four kinds of indulgence in pleasure lead solely to 24.5
disillusionment, dispassion, cessation, peace, insight, awakening,
and extinguishment.²⁰⁷ What four?

It's when a mendicant, quite secluded from sensual pleasures, 24.7
secluded from unskillful qualities, enters and remains in the first
absorption, which has the rapture and bliss born of seclusion, while
placing the mind and keeping it connected. This is the first kind of
indulgence in pleasure.

207. Again echoing the first sermon (SN 56.11:3.1), here the Buddha places the *jhānas* where, in the Dhammacakkappavattasutta, he put the middle way. He uses a similar strategy at DN 28:19.2.

- 24.9 Furthermore, as the placing of the mind and keeping it connected are stilled, a mendicant enters and remains in the second absorption. It has the rapture and bliss born of immersion, with internal clarity and mind at one, without placing the mind and keeping it connected. This is the second kind of indulgence in pleasure.
- 24.11 Furthermore, with the fading away of rapture, a mendicant enters and remains in the third absorption. They meditate with equanimity, mindful and aware, personally experiencing the bliss of which the noble ones declare, ‘Equanimous and mindful, one meditates in bliss.’ This is the third kind of indulgence in pleasure.
- 24.13 Furthermore, giving up pleasure and pain, and ending former happiness and sadness, a mendicant enters and remains in the fourth absorption. It is without pleasure or pain, with pure equanimity and mindfulness. This is the fourth kind of indulgence in pleasure.
- 24.15 These are the four kinds of indulgence in pleasure which lead solely to disillusionment, dispassion, cessation, peace, insight, awakening, and extinguishment.
- 24.16 It’s possible that wanderers of other religions might say, ‘The ascetics who follow the Sakyan live indulging in pleasure in these four ways.’ They should be told, ‘Exactly so!’ It’s right to say that about you; it doesn’t misrepresent you with an untruth.

10. The Benefits of Indulgence in Pleasure

- 25.1 It’s possible that wanderers of other religions might say, ‘How many fruits and benefits may be expected by those who live indulging in pleasure in these four ways?’ You should say to them, ‘Four benefits may be expected by those who live indulging in pleasure in these four ways. What four?’
- 25.6 Firstly, with the ending of three fetters a mendicant becomes a stream-enterer, not liable to be reborn in the underworld, bound for awakening. This is the first fruit and benefit.

Furthermore, a mendicant—with the ending of three fetters, 25.8 and the weakening of greed, hate, and delusion—becomes a once-returner. They come back to this world once only, then make an end of suffering. This is the second fruit and benefit.

Furthermore, with the ending of the five lower fetters, a mendicant is reborn spontaneously and will become extinguished there, 25.10 not liable to return from that world. This is the third fruit and benefit.

Furthermore, a mendicant realizes the undefiled freedom of 25.12 heart and freedom by wisdom in this very life, and lives having realized it with their own insight due to the ending of defilements. This is the fourth fruit and benefit.

These four benefits may be expected by those who live indulging 25.14 in pleasure in these four ways.²⁰⁸

11. Things Impossible for the Perfected

It's possible that wanderers of other religions might say, 'The ascetics who follow the Sakyan are fickle.'²⁰⁹ You should say to them, 'Reverends, these things have been taught and pointed out for his disciples by the Blessed One, who knows and sees, the perfected one, the fully awakened Buddha, not to be transgressed so long as life lasts. Suppose there was a boundary pillar or an iron pillar with deep foundations, firmly embedded, imperturbable and unshakable. In the same way, these things have been taught and pointed out for his disciples by the Blessed One, who knows and sees, the

208. Some meditation teachers warn of the supposed dangers of becoming attached to the pleasure of meditation. The Buddha's view was that the pleasure of meditation arises from letting go and leads to Nibbana.

209. At AN 8.19:3.1 the ocean is said to be *ñhitadhammo*, "naturally stable". Both places are glossed as *ñhitasabhāvā*. It seems this is in reference to the fact that the Buddhist Vinaya is gentle and flexible. The Buddha was ready to alter and adjust details when circumstances required, yet the fundamental principles hold firm.

perfected one, the fully awakened Buddha, not to be transgressed so long as life lasts.

- 26.7 A mendicant who is perfected—with defilements ended, who has completed the spiritual journey, done what had to be done, laid down the burden, achieved their own true goal, utterly ended the fetters of rebirth, and is rightly freed through enlightenment—can’t transgress in nine respects.²¹⁰ A mendicant with defilements ended can’t deliberately take the life of a living creature, take something with the intention to steal, have sex, tell a deliberate lie, or store up goods for their own enjoyment like they used to as a lay person. And they can’t make decisions prejudiced by favoritism, hostility, stupidity, or cowardice. A mendicant who is perfected can’t transgress in these nine respects.’

12. Questions and Answers

- 27.1 It’s possible that wanderers of other religions might say, ‘The ascetic Gotama demonstrates boundless knowledge and vision of the past, but not of the future. What’s up with that?’ Those wanderers, like incompetent fools, seem to imagine that one kind of knowledge and vision can be demonstrated by means of another kind of knowledge and vision.²¹¹
- 27.4 Regarding the past, the Realized One has knowledge stemming from memory. He recollects as far as he wants.
- 27.6 Regarding the future, the Realized One has the knowledge born of awakening:²¹² ‘This is my last rebirth. Now there are no more future lives.’
- 28.1 If a question about the past is untrue, false, and pointless, the Realized One does not reply. If a question about the past is true and correct, but pointless, he does not reply. If a question about

210. As at AN 9.7:3.3, etc.

211. It is possible to remember the past, but knowledge of the future is restricted to inferences in specific contexts and cannot be predicted in general.

212. The Buddha claims no gift of prophecy, unlike some other sages, but he knows that which matters.

the past is true, correct, and beneficial, he knows the right time to reply. And the Realized One replies to questions about the future or the present in the same way.

And so the Realized One has speech that's well-timed, true, 28.8
meaningful, in line with the teaching and training. That's why he's called the 'Realized One'.²¹³

In this world—with its gods, Māras, and Brahmās, this pop- 29.1
ulation with its ascetics and brahmins, its gods and humans—whatever is seen, heard, thought, known, attained, sought, and explored by the mind, all that has been understood by the Realized One. That's why he's called the 'Realized One'.

From the night when the Realized One understands the 29.3
supreme perfect awakening until the night he becomes fully extinguished—in the element of extinguishment with nothing left over—everything he speaks, says, and expresses is real, not otherwise. That's why he's called the 'Realized One'.

The Realized One does as he says, and says as he does. Since this 29.5
is so, that's why he's called the 'Realized One'. In this world—with its gods, Māras and Brahmās, this population with its ascetics and brahmins, gods and humans—the Realized One is the vanquisher, the unvanquished, the universal seer, the wielder of power.

13. The Undeclared Points

It's possible that wanderers of other religions might say, 'Is this 30.1
your view: "A realized one still exists after death. This is the only truth, other ideas are silly"?'²¹⁴ You should say to them, 'Reverend, this has not been declared by the Buddha.'

The wanderers might say, 'Then is this your view: "A realized 30.6
one no longer exists after death. This is the only truth, other ideas

213. See AN 4.23 and Iti 112.

214. Here these questions follow on from the Buddha's acknowledgment of epistemological limitations. Not everything can be known, and if it is, it is not always useful to speak of it.

are silly”?’ You should say to them, ‘This too has not been declared by the Buddha.’

30.11 The wanderers might say, ‘Then is this your view: “A realized one both still exists and no longer exists after death. This is the only truth, other ideas are silly”?’ You should say to them, ‘This too has not been declared by the Buddha.’

30.16 The wanderers might say, ‘Then is this your view: “A realized one neither still exists nor no longer exists after death. This is the only truth, other ideas are silly”?’ You should say to them, ‘This too has not been declared by the Buddha.’

31.1 The wanderers might say, ‘But why has this not been declared by the ascetic Gotama?’ You should say to them, ‘Because it’s not beneficial or relevant to the fundamentals of the spiritual life. It doesn’t lead to disillusionment, dispassion, cessation, peace, insight, awakening, and extinguishment. That’s why it hasn’t been declared by the Buddha.’

14. The Declared Points

32.1 It’s possible that wanderers of other religions might say, ‘But what has been declared by the ascetic Gotama?’ You should say to them, ‘What has been declared by the Buddha is this: “This is suffering”—“This is the origin of suffering”—“This is the cessation of suffering”—“This is the practice that leads to the cessation of suffering.”’

33.1 The wanderers might say, ‘But why has this been declared by the ascetic Gotama?’ You should say to them, ‘Because it’s beneficial and relevant to the fundamentals of the spiritual life. It leads to disillusionment, dispassion, cessation, peace, insight, awakening, and extinguishment. That’s why it has been declared by the Buddha.’

15. Views of the Past

Cunda, I have explained to you as they should be explained the views that some rely on regarding the past.²¹⁵ Shall I explain them to you in the wrong way? I have explained to you as they should be explained the views that some rely on regarding the future. Shall I explain them to you in the wrong way? 34.1

What are the views that some rely on regarding the past? There are some ascetics and brahmins who have this doctrine and view: ‘The self and the cosmos are eternal. This is the only truth, other ideas are silly.’ There are some ascetics and brahmins who have this doctrine and view: ‘The self and the cosmos are not eternal, or both eternal and not eternal, or neither eternal nor not eternal. The self and the cosmos are made by oneself, or made by another, or made by both oneself and another, or they have arisen by chance, not made by oneself or another. Pleasure and pain are eternal, or not eternal, or both eternal and not eternal, or neither eternal nor not eternal. Pleasure and pain are made by oneself, or made by another, or made by both oneself and another, or they have arisen by chance, not made by oneself or another. This is the only truth, other ideas are silly.’ 34.5

Regarding this, I go up to the ascetics and brahmins whose view is that the self and the cosmos are eternal, and say, ‘Reverends, is this what you say, “The self and the cosmos are eternal”?’ But when they say, ‘Yes! This is the only truth, other ideas are silly,’ I don’t acknowledge that. Why is that? Because there are beings who have different opinions on this topic. I don’t see any such expositions that are equal to my own, still less superior. Rather, I am the one who is superior when it comes to the higher exposition. 35.1

Regarding this, I go up to the ascetics and brahmins who assert all the other views as described above. And in each case, I don’t acknowledge that. Why is that? Because there are beings who have different opinions on this topic. I don’t see any such expositions 36.1

215. In the *Brahmajālasutta* (DN 1).

that are equal to my own, still less superior. Rather, I am the one who is superior when it comes to the higher exposition.

36.27 These are the views that some rely on regarding the past.

16. Views of the Future

37.1 What are the views that some rely on regarding the future? There are some ascetics and brahmins who have this doctrine and view: ‘The self has form and is free of disease after death, or it is formless, or both having form and formless, or neither having form nor formless, or percipient, or non-percipient, or neither percipient nor non-percipient, or the self is annihilated and destroyed when the body breaks up, and doesn’t exist after death. This is the only truth, other ideas are silly.’

38.1 Regarding this, I go up to the ascetics and brahmins whose view is that ‘The self has form and is free of disease after death, and say, ‘Reverends, is this what you say, “The self has form and is free of disease after death?”’ But when they say, ‘Yes! This is the only truth, other ideas are silly,’ I don’t acknowledge that. Why is that? Because there are beings who have different opinions on this topic. I don’t see any such expositions that are equal to my own, still less superior. Rather, I am the one who is superior when it comes to the higher exposition.

39.1 Regarding this, I go up to the ascetics and brahmins who assert all the other views as described above. And in each case, I don’t acknowledge that. Why is that? Because there are beings who have different opinions on this topic. I don’t see any such expositions that are equal to my own, still less superior. Rather, I am the one who is superior when it comes to the higher exposition.

39.19 These are the views that some rely on regarding the future, which I have explained to you as they should be explained. Shall I explain them to you in the wrong way?

40.1 I have taught and pointed out the four kinds of mindfulness meditation for giving up and going beyond all these views of the

past and the future.²¹⁶ What four? It's when a mendicant meditates by observing an aspect of the body—keen, aware, and mindful, rid of covetousness and displeasure for the world. They meditate observing an aspect of feelings ... mind ... principles—keen, aware, and mindful, rid of covetousness and displeasure for the world. These are the four kinds of mindfulness meditation that I have taught for giving up and going beyond all these views of the past and the future.”

Now at that time Venerable Upavāna was standing behind the 41.1
Buddha fanning him. He said to the Buddha, “It’s incredible, sir, it’s amazing! This exposition of the teaching is impressive, sir, it is very impressive. Sir, what is the name of this exposition of the teaching?”

“Well then, Upavāna, you may remember this exposition of the 41.6
teaching as “The Impressive Discourse.”

That is what the Buddha said. Satisfied, Venerable Upavāna was 41.7
happy with what the Buddha said.

216. The *Brahmajālasutta* describes the path to the end of these views in terms of understanding dependent origination through contemplation of contact in the six senses (DN 1:3.71.12). The Buddhist path is integrated, so one part always implies the whole.

DN 30

The Marks of a Great Man

Lakkhaṇasutta

1.1.1 SO I HAVE HEARD. At one time the Buddha was staying near Sāvattthī in Jeta’s Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika’s monastery. There the Buddha addressed the mendicants, “Mendicants!”

1.1.5 “Venerable sir,” they replied. The Buddha said this:

1.1.7 “There are thirty-two marks of a great man. A great man who possesses these has only two possible destinies, no other.²¹⁷ If he stays at home he becomes a king, a wheel-turning monarch, a just and principled king. His dominion extends to all four sides, he achieves stability in the country, and he possesses the seven treasures. He has the following seven treasures: the wheel, the elephant, the horse, the jewel, the woman, the treasurer, and the counselor as the seventh treasure. He has over a thousand sons who are valiant and heroic, crushing the armies of his enemies. After conquering this land girt by sea, he reigns by principle, without rod or sword. But if he goes forth from the lay life to homelessness,

217. This is one of the latest suttas in the Pali Nikāyas. Typically this topic only comes up in relation to the Buddha’s fulfillment of Brahmanical prophecies. Here it is developed with a series of ornate verses, none of which have parallels. Nonetheless, it is worth noting that nowhere in the extensive discussions of the Buddha’s past good deeds is there any mention of the later concepts of the *pāramīs* (“perfections”) or the Bodhisatta path.

he becomes a perfected one, a fully awakened Buddha, who draws back the veil from the world.

And what are the thirty-two marks? ²¹⁸	1.2.1
He has well-planted feet.	1.2.4
On the soles of his feet there are thousand-spoked wheels, with rims and hubs, complete in every detail.	1.2.5
He has stretched heels.	1.2.6
He has long fingers.	1.2.7
His hands and feet are tender.	1.2.8
He has serried hands and feet.	1.2.9
The tops of his feet are arched.	1.2.10
His calves are like those of an antelope.	1.2.11
When standing upright and not bending over, the palms of both hands touch the knees.	1.2.12
His private parts are covered in a foreskin.	1.2.13
He is gold colored; his skin has a golden sheen.	1.2.14
He has delicate skin, so delicate that dust and dirt don't stick to his body.	1.2.15
His hairs grow one per pore.	1.2.16
His hairs stand up; they're blue-black and curl clockwise.	1.2.17
His body is tall and straight-limbed.	1.2.18
He has bulging muscles in seven places.	1.2.19
His chest is like that of a lion.	1.2.20
He is filled out between the shoulders.	1.2.21
He has the proportional circumference of a banyan tree: the span of his arms equals the height of his body.	1.2.22
His torso is cylindrical.	1.2.23
He has ridged taste buds.	1.2.24
His jaw is like that of a lion.	1.2.25
He has forty teeth.	1.2.26
His teeth are even.	1.2.27
His teeth have no gaps.	1.2.28

218. The marks are elsewhere listed in DN 14:1.32.7 and MN 91:9.1. I discuss the translation of the marks in my comments to DN 14.

- 1.2.29 His teeth are perfectly white.
 1.2.30 He has a large tongue.
 1.2.31 He has the voice of Brahmā, like a cuckoo's call.
 1.2.32 His eyes are indigo.
 1.2.33 He has eyelashes like a cow's.
 1.2.34 Between his eyebrows there grows a tuft, soft and white like cotton-wool.
 1.2.35 The crown of his head is like a turban.
 1.3.1 These are the thirty-two marks of a great man. A great man who possesses these has only two possible destinies, no other.
 1.3.4 Seers who are outsiders remember these marks, but they do not know the specific deeds performed in the past to obtain each mark.²¹⁹

1. Well-Planted Feet

- 1.4.1 In some past lives, past existences, past abodes the Realized One was reborn as a human being. He firmly and persistently undertook skillful behaviors such as good conduct by way of body, speech, and mind, giving and sharing, taking precepts, observing the sabbath, paying due respect to mother and father, ascetics and brahmins, honoring the elders in the family, and various other things pertaining to skillful behaviors.²²⁰ Due to performing, accumulating, heaping up, and amassing those deeds, when his body broke up, after death, he was reborn in a good place, a heavenly realm. There he surpassed the other gods in ten respects: divine life span, beauty, happiness, glory, sovereignty, sights, sounds, smells, tastes, and touches. When he passed away from there and came back to this state of existence he obtained this mark of a great man: he has well-planted feet. He places his foot on the ground evenly, raises it

219. The later astrological texts such as the *Gārgiyajyotiṣa* and *Bṛhatsaṃhitā* that discuss similar marks are more concerned with how they indicate character and destiny than their moral causes.

220. The key terms here are *dalha* ("firm") and *avatthita* ("persistently"), which result in his firm stance.

evenly, and touches the ground evenly with the whole sole of his foot.

Possessing this mark, if he stays at home he becomes a wheel- 1.5.1
turning monarch. He has the following seven treasures: the wheel, the elephant, the horse, the jewel, the woman, the treasurer, and the counselor as the seventh treasure. He has over a thousand sons who are valiant and heroic, crushing the armies of his enemies. After conquering this land girt by sea—free of harassment by bandits, successful and prosperous, safe, blessed, and untroubled—he reigns by principle, without rod or sword. And what does he obtain as king? He can't be stopped by any human foe or enemy. That's what he obtains as king. But if he goes forth from the lay life to homelessness, he becomes a perfected one, a fully awakened Buddha, who draws back the veil from the world. And what does he obtain as Buddha? He can't be stopped by any foe or enemy whether internal or external; nor by greed, hate, or delusion; nor by any ascetic or brahmin or god or Māra or Brahmā or by anyone in the world. That's what he obtains as Buddha." The Buddha spoke this matter.

On this it is said: 1.6.1

"Truth, principle, self-control, and restraint;²²¹ 1.6.2
purity, precepts, and observing the sabbath;
giving, harmlessness, delighting in non-violence—
firmly undertaking these things, he lived accordingly.

By means of these deeds he went to heaven, 1.6.6
where he enjoyed happiness and merriment.
After passing away from there to here,
he steps evenly on this rich earth.

The gathered soothsayers predicted 1.6.10

221. K.R. Norman's series of five articles on *The Metres of the Lakkhaṇa-suttanta* discusses the verses in detail, and my translation is indebted to him. He notes that the 20 verse passages employ no less than seven distinct metres, all of them either new or updated styles.

that there is no stopping one of such even tread,
as householder or renunciate.
That's the meaning shown by this mark.

1.6.14 While living at home he cannot be stopped,
he defeats his foes, and cannot be beaten.
Due to the fruit of that deed,
he cannot be stopped by any human.

1.6.18 But if he chooses the life gone forth,
seeing clearly, loving renunciation,
not even the best can ever stop him;²²²
this is the nature of the supreme person.”

2. Wheels on the Feet

1.7.1 “Mendicants, in some past lives the Realized One was reborn as a human being. He conveyed happiness to many people, eliminating threats, terror, and danger, providing just protection and security, and giving gifts with all the trimmings.²²³ Due to performing those deeds he was reborn in a heavenly realm. When he came back to this state of existence he obtained this mark: on the soles of his feet there are thousand-spoked wheels, with rims and hubs, complete in every detail and well divided inside.

1.8.1 Possessing this mark, if he stays at home he becomes a wheel-turning monarch. And what does he obtain as king? He has a large following of brahmins and householders, people of town and country, treasury officials, military officers, guardsmen, ministers,

222. The commentary confirms the Mahāsaṅgīti reading *khambhana* (“obstacle”) here rather than PTS *gabbha* (“womb”).

223. He “conveyed happiness” (*sukhāvaho*), like a wheeled cart would convey goods. | *Parivāra* means “surroundings, accompaniments”, and I follow the commentary, which takes it in the sense of the “trimmings” accompanying the food. Given, however, that the kammic result is a large *parivāra* (“following”), it might mean that he gave not just physical things, but was generous with his followers also, engaging them in such beneficial tasks.

counselors, rulers, tax beneficiaries, and princes. That's what he obtains as king. But if he goes forth from the lay life to homelessness, he becomes a fully awakened Buddha. And what does he obtain as Buddha? He has a large following of monks, nuns, laymen, laywomen, gods, humans, titans, dragons, and centaurs. That's what he obtains as Buddha." The Buddha spoke this matter.

On this it is said: 1.9.1

"In olden days, in past lives, 1.9.2
he brought happiness to many people,
ridding them of fear, terror, and danger,
eagerly guarding and protecting them.

By means of these deeds he went to heaven, 1.9.6
where he enjoyed happiness and merriment.
After passing away from there to here,
wheels on his two feet are found,

all rimmed around and thousand-spoked. 1.9.10
The gathered soothsayers predicted,
seeing the prince

with the hundred-fold mark of merits,²²⁴
that he'd have a following, subduing foes,

which is why he has wheels all rimmed around. 1.9.14
If he doesn't choose the life gone forth,
he'll roll the wheel and rule the land.
The aristocrats will be his vassals,

flocking to his glory. 1.9.18
But if he chooses the life gone forth,
seeing clearly, loving renunciation,
the gods, humans, titans, Sakka, and monsters;

224. This refers to the late legend of the soothsayers seeing the baby Siddhattha, and as such *kumāra* should be taken as "prince".

- 1.9.22 centaurs and dragons, birds and beasts,
 will flock to his glory,
 the supreme, honored by gods and humans.”

3–5. Stretched Heels, Etc.

- 1.10.1 “Mendicants, in some past lives the Realized One was reborn as a human being. He gave up killing living creatures, renouncing the rod and the sword. He was scrupulous and kind, living full of compassion for all living beings. Due to performing those deeds he was reborn in a heavenly realm. When he came back to this state of existence he obtained these three marks: he has stretched heels, long fingers, and his body is tall and straight-limbed.²²⁵
- 1.11.1 Possessing these marks, if he stays at home he becomes a wheel-turning monarch. And what does he obtain as king? He’s long-lived, preserving his life for a long time. No human foe or enemy is able to take his life before his time. That’s what he obtains as king. And what does he obtain as Buddha? He’s long-lived, preserving his life for a long time. No foes or enemies—nor any ascetic or brahmin or god or Māra or Brahmā or anyone in the world—is able to take his life before his time. That’s what he obtains as Buddha.” The Buddha spoke this matter.
- 1.12.1 On this it is said:
- 1.12.2 “Realizing for himself the horrors of death,
 he refrained from killing other creatures.
 By that good conduct he went to heaven,
 where he enjoyed the fruit of deeds well done.
- 1.12.6 Passing away, on his return to here,
 he obtained these three marks:
 his stretched heels are abundant and long,

225. Giving up killing results in long life. This seems to be applied by metaphor to having these long and elegant body parts.

and like Brahmā, he's straight and beautiful,
with well-formed limbs.²²⁶

Fair of arm, youthful, of good posture and breeding, 1.12.10
his fingers are soft and tender and long.
By these three marks of an excellent man,
they indicated that the prince's life would be long:

'As a householder he will live long;²²⁷ 1.12.14
longer still if he goes forth, due to
mastery in the development of psychic power.
Thus this is the sign of long life.'

6. Seven Rounded Places

"Mendicants, in some past lives the Realized One was reborn as a 1.13.1
human being. He was a donor of delicious and tasty cooked and
fresh foods, and drinks that were sweet and succulent.²²⁸ Due to
performing those deeds he was reborn in a heavenly realm. When
he came back to this state of existence he obtained this mark: he is
rounded in seven places. Both hands, both feet, both shoulders,
and his chest are all rounded.

Possessing this mark, if he stays at home he becomes a wheel- 1.14.1
turning monarch. And what does he obtain as king? He gets deli-
cious and tasty cooked and fresh foods, and drinks that are sweet
and succulent. That's what he obtains as king. And what does he
obtain as Buddha? He gets delicious and tasty cooked and fresh
foods, and drinks that are sweet and succulent. That's what he
obtains as Buddha." The Buddha spoke this matter.

On this it is said: 1.15.1

226. Whereas in the phrase *brahmujugatto*, *brahm-* means "extended, tall", here *brahmāva* means "like Brahmā", either as a play on words or by mistaken etymology.

227. This verse spoken by the soothsayers.

228. He receives bodily fullness as a result of giving food.

- 1.15.2 “He used to give the very best of flavors—
 scrumptious foods of every kind.
 Because of that good deed,
 he rejoiced long in Nandana heaven.
- 1.15.6 On returning to here, he is rounded in seven places,
 and tender hands and feet are found.
 The soothsayers expert in signs declared:
 ‘He’ll get tasty foods of all sorts
- 1.15.10 as a householder, that’s what that means.
 But even if he goes forth he’ll get the same,
 supreme in gaining tasty foods of all sorts,
 cutting all bonds of the lay life.’”

7–8. Tender and Serried Hands

- 1.16.1 “Mendicants, in some past lives the Realized One was reborn as
 a human being. He brought people together using the four ways
 of being inclusive: giving, kindly words, taking care, and equality.
 Due to performing those deeds he was reborn in a heavenly realm.
 When he came back to this state of existence he obtained these
 two marks: his hands and feet are tender, and they are serried.²²⁹
- 1.17.1 Possessing these marks, if he stays at home he becomes a wheel-
 turning monarch. And what does he obtain as king? His retinue
 is inclusive, cohesive, and well-managed. This includes brahmins
 and householders, people of town and country, treasury officials,
 military officers, guardsmen, ministers, counselors, rulers, tax ben-
 eficiaries, and princes.²³⁰ That’s what he obtains as king. And

229. “Tender” because he treated people tenderly; “serried” because his fingers and toes are kept gracefully together, not splayed and separated.

230. “Inclusive and well-managed” renders *saṅgahita*. It means “included”, as in those people who, due to the kindly actions, feel that they belong. For the sense “well-managed” see AN 8.49:2.3. Because of acting kindly and inclusively, people are well-disposed and work well together.

what does he obtain as Buddha? His retinue is inclusive and well-managed. This includes monks, nuns, laymen, laywomen, gods, humans, titans, dragons, and centaurs. That's what he obtains as Buddha." The Buddha spoke this matter.

On this it is said: 1.18.1

"By giving and helping others, 1.18.2
kindly speech, and equal treatment,
such action and conduct as brought people together,
he went to heaven due to his esteemed virtue.

Passing away, on his return to here, 1.18.6
the young baby prince obtained
hands and feet so tender and serried,
lovely, graceful, and good-looking.

His retinue is loyal and manageable, 1.18.10
staying agreeably all over this broad land.²³¹
Speaking kindly, seeking happiness,
he implements agreeable qualities.

But if he gives up all sensual enjoyments, 1.18.14
as victor he speaks Dhamma to the people.
Devoted, they respond to his words;
after listening, they practice in line with the teaching."

9–10. Arched Feet and Upright Hair

"Mendicants, in some past lives the Realized One was reborn as 1.19.1
a human being. His speech was meaningful and principled. He
educated many people, bringing welfare and happiness, offering
the teaching. Due to performing those deeds he was reborn in a
heavenly realm. When he came back to this state of existence he

231. Even though the community is geographically dispersed, it is still coherent.

obtained these two marks: the tops of his feet are arched and his hairs stand up.²³²

1.20.1 Possessing these marks, if he stays at home he becomes a wheel-turning monarch. And what does he obtain as king? He is the foremost, best, chief, highest, and finest of those who enjoy sensual pleasures. That's what he obtains as king. And what does he obtain as Buddha? He is the foremost, best, chief, highest, and finest of all sentient beings. That's what he obtains as Buddha." The Buddha spoke this matter.

1.21.1 On this it is said:

1.21.2 "His word was meaningful and principled,
moving the people with his explanations.
He brought welfare and happiness to creatures,
unstintingly offering up teaching.

1.21.6 Because of that good deed,
he advanced to heaven and there rejoiced.
On return to here two marks are found,
of excellence and supremacy.

1.21.10 His hairs stand upright,
and his ankles stand out well.
Swollen with flesh and blood, encased in skin,
beautified above the feet.

1.21.14 If such a one lives in the home, he becomes
the best of those who enjoy sensual pleasures.
There'll be none better than him;
he'll proceed having mastered all India.

1.21.18 But going forth the peerless renunciate
turns into the best of all creatures.
There'll be none better than him,

232. Perhaps the uprightness of these marks relates to his speech being beneficial, leading upwards.

he'll live having mastered the whole world."

11. Antelope Calves

"Mendicants, in some past lives the Realized One was reborn as a human being. He was a thorough teacher of a profession, a branch of knowledge, conduct, or action, thinking: 'How might they quickly learn and practice, without getting exhausted?' Due to performing those deeds he was reborn in a heavenly realm. When he came back to this state of existence he obtained this mark: his calves are like those of an antelope."²³³ 1.22.1

Possessing this mark, if he stays at home he becomes a wheel-turning monarch. And what does he obtain as king? He quickly obtains the things worthy of a king, the factors, supports, and things befitting a king. That's what he obtains as king. And what does he obtain as Buddha? He quickly obtains the things worthy of an ascetic, the factors, supports, and things befitting an ascetic. That's what he obtains as Buddha." The Buddha spoke this matter. 1.23.1

On this it is said: 1.24.1

"In professions, knowledge, conduct, and deeds, 1.24.2
he thought of how they might easily learn.
Quickly, without tiresome delays,
he taught them things that harm no-one at all.

Having done that skillful deed 1.24.6
whose outcome is happiness,
he gains prominent and elegant calves.
Well-formed in graceful spirals,
he's covered in fine rising hairs.

They say that person has antelope calves, 1.24.10
and that this is the mark of swift success.
If he desires the things fitting the household life,

233. It seems that his "swift" teaching techniques evoke the antelope.

not going forth, they'll quickly be his.

- 1.24.14 But if he chooses the life gone forth,
seeing clearly, loving renunciation,
the peerless renunciate will quickly find
what is fitting and suitable.”²³⁴

12. Delicate Skin

- 1.25.1 “Mendicants, in some past lives the Realized One was reborn as a human being. He approached an ascetic or brahmin and asked: ‘Sirs, what is skillful? What is unskillful? What is blameworthy? What is blameless? What should be cultivated? What should not be cultivated? Doing what leads to my lasting harm and suffering? Doing what leads to my lasting welfare and happiness?’ Due to performing those deeds he was reborn in a heavenly realm. When he came back to this state of existence he obtained this mark: he has delicate skin, so delicate that dust and dirt don’t stick to his body.”²³⁵
- 1.26.1 Possessing this mark, if he stays at home he becomes a wheel-turning monarch. And what does he obtain as king? He has great wisdom. Of those who enjoy sensual pleasures, none is his equal or better in wisdom. That’s what he obtains as king. And what does he obtain as Buddha? He has great wisdom, widespread wisdom, laughing wisdom, swift wisdom, sharp wisdom, and penetrating wisdom. No sentient being is his equal or better in wisdom. That’s what he obtains as Buddha.” The Buddha spoke this matter.
- 1.27.1 On this it is said:
- 1.27.2 “In olden days, in past lives,
eager to understand, he asked questions.
Keen to learn, he waited on renunciates,

234. Read *anomanikkamo*.

235. Asking questions leads to wisdom, and the mind of wisdom does not get attached.

heeding their explanation with pure intent.

Due to that deed of acquiring wisdom, 1.27.6
as a human being his skin is delicate.

At his birth

the soothsayers expert in signs prophesied:
‘He’ll discern delicate matters.’

If he doesn’t choose the life gone forth, 1.27.10
he’ll roll the wheel and rule the land.

Among those with material possessions
who have been educated,
none equal or better than him is found.

But if he chooses the life gone forth, 1.27.14
seeing clearly, loving renunciation,
gaining wisdom that’s supreme and eminent,
the one of superb, vast intelligence
attains awakening.”

13. Golden Skin

“Mendicants, in some past lives the Realized One was reborn as a 1.28.1
human being. He wasn’t irritable or bad-tempered. Even when
heavily criticized he didn’t lose his temper, become annoyed, hos-
tile, and hard-hearted, or display annoyance, hate, and bitterness.
He donated soft and fine mats and blankets, and fine cloths of
linen, cotton, silk, and wool. Due to performing those deeds he
was reborn in a heavenly realm. When he came back to this state
of existence he obtained this mark: he is gold colored; his skin has
a golden sheen.”²³⁶

Possessing this mark, if he stays at home he becomes a wheel- 1.29.1
turning monarch. And what does he obtain as king? He obtains

236. Giving fine coverings leads to fine skin. Less obviously, anger is said to lead to discoloring and ugliness.

soft and fine mats and blankets, and fine cloths of linen, cotton, silk, and wool. That's what he obtains as king. And what does he obtain as Buddha? He obtains soft and fine mats and blankets, and fine cloths of linen, cotton, silk, and wool. That's what he obtains as Buddha." The Buddha spoke this matter.

1.30.1 On this it is said:

1.30.2 "Dedicated to good will, he gave gifts.
In an earlier life he poured forth cloth
fine and soft to touch,
like a god pouring rain on this broad earth.²³⁷

1.30.6 So doing he passed from here to heaven,
where he enjoyed the fruits of deeds well done.
Here he wins a figure of gold,
like Indra, the finest of gods.

1.30.10 If that man stays in the house, not wishing to go forth,
he conquers and rules this vast, broad earth.
He obtains abundant excellent cloth,
so fine and soft to touch.

1.30.14 He receives robes, cloth, and the finest garments²³⁸
if he chooses the life gone forth.
For he still partakes of past deed's fruit;
what's been done is never lost."

14. Privates in Foreskin

1.31.1 "Mendicants, in some past lives the Realized One was reborn as a human being. He reunited long-lost and long-separated relatives, friends, loved ones, and companions. He reunited mother with child and child with mother; father with child and child with father;

237. There's a play on *abhivissaji* ("gave away") and *abhivassa* ("pouring rain").

238. Here *mokkha* = *pāmomkha* ("chief, best").

brother with brother, brother with sister, sister with brother, and sister with sister, bringing them together with rejoicing. Due to performing those deeds he was reborn in a heavenly realm. When he came back to this state of existence he obtained this mark: his private parts are covered in a foreskin.²³⁹

Possessing this mark, if he stays at home he becomes a wheel- 1.32.1
turning monarch. And what does he obtain as king? He has many sons, over a thousand sons who are valiant and heroic, crushing the armies of his enemies. That's what he obtains as king. And what does he obtain as Buddha? He has many sons, many thousands of sons who are valiant and heroic, crushing the armies of his enemies. That's what he obtains as Buddha." The Buddha spoke this matter.

On this it is said: 1.33.1

"In olden days, in past lives, 1.33.2
he reunited long-lost
and long-separated friends and family,
bringing them together with joy.

By means of these deeds he went to heaven, 1.33.6
where he enjoyed happiness and merriment.
After passing away from there to here,
his private parts are covered in a foreskin.

Such a one has many sons, 1.33.10
over a thousand descendants,
valiant and heroic, devastating foes,
a layman's joy, speaking kindly.

But if he lives the renunciate life 1.33.14
he has even more sons following his word.
As householder or renunciate,
that's the meaning shown by this mark."

239. The penis is the generative organ and hence part-creator of family. Being covered suggests that his sexuality was moderated and contained. His role was more than having children, it was building family.

The first recitation section is finished.

15–16. Equal Proportions and Touching the Knees

2.1.1 “Mendicants, in some past lives the Realized One was reborn as a human being. Examining the gathered population, he knew what they had in common and what was their own; he knew each person, and he knew the distinctions between people. In each case, he made appropriate distinctions between people: ‘This one deserves that; that one deserves this.’ Due to performing those deeds he was reborn in a heavenly realm. When he came back to this state of existence he obtained these two marks: he has the proportional circumference of a banyan tree; and when standing upright and not bending over, the palms of both hands touch the knees.²⁴⁰

2.2.1 Possessing these marks, if he stays at home he becomes a wheel-turning monarch. And what does he obtain as king? He is rich, affluent, and wealthy, with lots of gold and silver, lots of property and assets, lots of money and grain, and a full treasury and store-houses. That’s what he obtains as king. And what does he obtain as Buddha? He is rich, affluent, and wealthy. He has these kinds of wealth: the wealth of faith, ethics, conscience, prudence, learning, generosity, and wisdom. That’s what he obtains as Buddha.” The Buddha spoke this matter.

2.3.1 On this it is said:

2.3.2 “Examining the many people in a community,
he heighed, evaluated, and judged each case:
‘This one deserves that.’
That’s how he used to draw
distinctions between people.

240. The banyan tree is not just proportioned, it offers shelter to many creatures. Touching the knees indicates connecting with the manyfolk, who at AN 5.196:3.1 are likened to caterpillars reaching the knees.

Now standing without bending
 he can touch his knees with both hands.
 With the remaining ripening
 of the fruit of good deeds,
 his circumference was that of a great tree.

2.3.6

Learned experts in the many different
 signs and marks prophesied:
 “The young prince will obtain
 many different things that householders deserve.

2.3.10

Here there are many suitable pleasures
 for the ruler of the land to enjoy as householder.
 But if he gives up all sensual enjoyments,
 he will gain the supreme, highest peak of wealth.”

2.3.14

17–19. A Lion’s Chest, Etc.

“Mendicants, in some past lives the Realized One was reborn as
 a human being. He desired the good, the welfare, the comfort,
 and sanctuary of the people, thinking: ‘How might they flourish in
 faith, ethics, learning, generosity, teachings, and wisdom; in wealth
 and grain, fields and land, birds and beasts, children and partners;
 in bondservants, workers, and staff; in family, friends, and kin?’
 Due to performing those deeds he was reborn in a heavenly realm.
 When he came back to this state of existence he obtained these
 three marks: his chest is like that of a lion; he is filled out between
 the shoulders.; and his torso is cylindrical.²⁴¹

2.4.1

Possessing these marks, if he stays at home he becomes a wheel-
 turning monarch. And what does he obtain as king? He’s not
 liable to decline. He doesn’t decline in wealth and grain, fields
 and land, birds and beasts, children and partners; in bondservants,

2.5.1

241. A *khema* is a sanctuary where animals flourish in peace, without fear of the hunter. Likewise, the Buddha’s body flourishes and has a fullness to it. He is slim but not skinny.

workers, and staff; in family, friends, and kin. He doesn't decline in any of his accomplishments. That's what he obtains as king. And what does he obtain as Buddha? He's not liable to decline. He doesn't decline in faith, ethics, learning, generosity, and wisdom. He doesn't decline in any of his accomplishments.²⁴² That's what he obtains as Buddha." The Buddha spoke this matter.

2.6.1 On this it is said:

2.6.2 "His wish was this: 'How may others not decline
in faith, ethics, learning, and intelligence,
in generosity, teachings, and much good else,
in coin and grain, fields and lands,

2.6.6 in children, partners, and livestock,
in family, friends, and kin,
in health, and both beauty and happiness?'
And so he ever desired their success.

2.6.10 His chest was prominent like that of a lion,
filled out between the shoulders,
and torso cylindrical.

Due to the well-done deeds of the past,
he had that portent of non-decline.

2.6.14 Even as layman he grows in coin and grain,
in wives, children, and livestock.
But once gone forth, owning nothing, he attains
the supreme awakening which may never decline."

20. Ridged Taste Buds

2.7.1 "Mendicants, in some past lives the Realized One was reborn as a human being. He would never hurt any sentient being with fists,

242. Decline in *dhamma* is missing here, but present both above and below in verse.

stones, rods, or swords. Due to performing those deeds he was reborn in a heavenly realm. When he came back to this state of existence he obtained this mark: he has ridged taste buds. His raised taste receptors, originating in the throat, disperse evenly.

Possessing this mark, if he stays at home he becomes a wheel- 2.8.1
turning monarch. And what does he obtain as king? He is rarely ill or unwell. His stomach digests well, being neither too hot nor too cold.²⁴³ That's what he obtains as king. And what does he obtain as Buddha? He is rarely ill or unwell. His stomach digests well, being neither too hot nor too cold, but just right, and fit for meditation. That's what he obtains as Buddha." The Buddha spoke this matter.

On this it is said: 2.9.1

"Not with fist or rod or stone, 2.9.2
or sword or beating to death,
or by bondage or threats
did he ever harm anyone.

For that very reason he rejoiced in heaven 2.9.6
after passing away,
finding happiness as a fruit of happy deeds.
With taste receptors prominent
and evenly spreading nutrition,
on his return here he has ridged taste buds.

That's why the clever prophets said: 2.9.10
"This man will have much happiness
as householder or renunciate.
That's the meaning shown by this mark."

243. The "ridged taste buds" are not merely for tasting, but support excellent digestion. Kammically, the rationale is that since he did not kill others, now nothing hurts him when he eats.

21–22. Indigo Eyes

2.10.1 “Mendicants, in some past lives the Realized One was reborn as a human being. When looking at others he didn’t glare, look askance, or avert his eyes. Being straightforward, he reached out to others with straightforward intentions, looking at people with kindly eyes. Due to performing those deeds he was reborn in a heavenly realm. When he came back to this state of existence he obtained these two marks: his eyes are indigo, and he has eyelashes like a cow’s.²⁴⁴

2.11.1 Possessing these marks, if he stays at home he becomes a wheel-turning monarch. And what does he obtain as king? The people look on him with kindly eyes. He is dear and beloved to the brahmins and householders, people of town and country, treasury officials, military officers, guardsmen, ministers, counselors, rulers, tax beneficiaries, and princes. That’s what he obtains as king. And what does he obtain as Buddha? The people look on him with kindly eyes. He is dear and beloved to the monks, nuns, laymen, laywomen, gods, humans, titans, dragons, and centaurs. That’s what he obtains as Buddha.” The Buddha spoke this matter.

2.12.1 On this it is said:

2.12.2 “With not a glare or glance askance,
nor averting of the eyes;
straightforward, he reached out straightforwardly,
looking at people with kindly eyes.

2.12.6 In good rebirths he enjoyed the fruit
and result, rejoicing there.
But here he has a cow’s eyelashes,
and indigo eyes so fair to see.

2.12.10 Many soothsayers, men clever²⁴⁵

244. Dark colored eyes give the impression of wide pupils and an open gaze, while the eye lashes of cows lend them a tenderness.

245. *Abhiyogino* (“soothsayers”) is a unique term, explained by the commentary, “they are dedicated to the lore of marks”.

and learned in prognostic texts,
expert in cow-like lashes, indicated he'd
be looked upon with kindly eyes.

Even as a householder he'd be regarded kindly, 2.12.14
beloved of the people.
But if he becomes an ascetic, not lay,
as destroyer of sorrow he'll be loved by many."

23. Crown Like a Turban

"Mendicants, in some past lives the Realized One was reborn as a 2.13.1
human being. He was the leader and forerunner of people in skillful
behaviors such as good conduct by way of body, speech, and mind,
giving and sharing, taking precepts, observing the sabbath, paying
due respect to mother and father, ascetics and brahmins, honoring
the elders in the family, and various other things pertaining to
skillful behaviors.²⁴⁶ Due to performing those deeds he was reborn
in a heavenly realm. When he came back to this state of existence
he obtained this mark: the crown of his head is like a turban.

Possessing this mark, if he stays at home he becomes a wheel- 2.14.1
turning monarch. And what does he obtain as king? He has a
large following of brahmins and householders, people of town and
country, treasury officials, military officers, guardsmen, ministers,
counselors, rulers, tax beneficiaries, and princes. That's what he
obtains as king. And what does he obtain as Buddha? He has a
large following of monks, nuns, laymen, laywomen, gods, humans,
titans, dragons, and centaurs. That's what he obtains as Buddha."
The Buddha spoke this matter.

On this it is said: 2.15.1

"Among people of good conduct, he was the leader, 2.15.2
devoted to a life of principle among the principled.

246. The commentary says he took the lead in good deeds "unembarrassed,
with head held high, his head filled with rapture and joy".

The people followed him,
and he experienced the fruit of good deeds in heaven.

2.15.6 Having experienced that fruit,
he gains a head crowned like a turban.
The experts in omens and signs prophesied:
‘He will be leader of the people.

2.15.10 Among people then, as before,
they will bring presents for him.
If he becomes an aristocrat, ruler of the land,
he’ll gain the service of the people.

2.15.14 But if that man goes forth,
he’ll be sophisticated, proficient in the teachings.
Devoted to the virtues of his instruction,
the people will become his followers.’”

24–25. One Hair Per Pore, and a Tuft

2.16.1 “Mendicants, in some past lives the Realized One was reborn as a human being. He refrained from lying. He spoke the truth and stuck to the truth. He was honest and trustworthy, and didn’t trick the world with his words. Due to performing those deeds he was reborn in a heavenly realm. When he came back to this state of existence he obtained these two marks: his hairs grow one per pore, and between his eyebrows there grows a tuft, soft and white like cotton-wool.²⁴⁷

2.17.1 Possessing these marks, if he stays at home he becomes a wheel-turning monarch. And what does he obtain as king? He has many close adherents among the brahmins and householders, people of town and country, treasury officials, military officers, guardsmen, ministers, counselors, rulers, tax beneficiaries, and princes. That’s

247. One hair per pore, because his words of truth have only one meaning. Likewise, the tuft conveys purity and integrity.

what he obtains as king. And what does he obtain as Buddha? He has many close adherents among the monks, nuns, laymen, laywomen, gods, humans, titans, dragons, and centaurs. That's what he obtains as Buddha." The Buddha spoke this matter.

On this it is said:

2.18.1

"In past lives he was true to his promise,
with no forked tongue, he shunned lies.
He never broke his word to anyone,
but spoke what was true, real, and factual.

2.18.2

A tuft so very white like cotton-wool
grew prettily between his eyebrows.
And never two, but only one,
hair grew in each of his pores.

2.18.6

Many soothsayers learned in marks
and expert in signs gathered and prophesied:
'One like this, with tuft and hair so prominent,
will have many as his close adherents.

2.18.10

Even as householder many people will follow him,
due to the power of deeds in the past.
But once gone forth, owning nothing,
as Buddha the people will follow him.'"

2.18.14

26–27. Forty Gapless Teeth

"Mendicants, in some past lives the Realized One was reborn as a human being. He refrained from divisive speech. He didn't repeat in one place what he heard in another so as to divide people against each other. Instead, he reconciled those who were divided, supporting unity, delighting in harmony, loving harmony, speaking words that promote harmony. Due to performing those deeds he was reborn in a heavenly realm. When he came back to this state

2.19.1

of existence he obtained these two marks: he has forty teeth, and his teeth have no gaps.²⁴⁸

2.20.1 Possessing these marks, if he stays at home he becomes a wheel-turning monarch. And what does he obtain as king? His retinue cannot be divided. This includes brahmins and householders, people of town and country, treasury officials, military officers, guardsmen, ministers, counselors, rulers, tax beneficiaries, and princes. That's what he obtains as king. And what does he obtain as Buddha? His retinue cannot be divided. This includes monks, nuns, laymen, laywomen, gods, humans, titans, dragons, and centaurs. That's what he obtains as Buddha." The Buddha spoke this matter.

2.21.1 On this it is said:

2.21.2 "He spoke no words divisive causing friends to split,
creating disputes that foster division,
acting improperly by fostering quarrels,
creating division among friends.

2.21.6 He spoke kind words to foster harmony,
uniting those who are divided.
He eliminated quarrels among the people,
rejoicing together with the united.

2.21.10 In good rebirths he enjoyed the fruit
and result, rejoicing there.
Here his teeth are gapless, close together,
forty standing prominent in his mouth.

2.21.14 If he becomes an aristocrat, ruler of the land,
his assembly will be indivisible.

248. The number four connotes "all around, complete, universal", primarily from the four directions. It is multiplied to eight with the intermediate directions, and ten including above and below. Forty, then, is four times ten, a number of super-inclusiveness or super-universality. The lack of gaps corresponds with the lack of division between his followers.

And as an ascetic, stainless, immaculate,
his assembly will follow him, unshakable.”

28–29. A Large Tongue and the Voice of Brahmā

“Mendicants, in some past lives the Realized One was reborn as a human being. He refrained from harsh speech. He spoke in a way that’s mellow, pleasing to the ear, lovely, going to the heart, polite, likable and agreeable to the people. Due to performing those deeds he was reborn in a heavenly realm. When he came back to this state of existence he obtained these two marks: he has a large tongue, and the voice of Brahmā, like a cuckoo’s call. 2.22.1

Possessing these marks, if he stays at home he becomes a wheel-turning monarch. And what does he obtain as king? He has a persuasive voice. His words are persuasive to brahmins and householders, people of town and country, treasury officials, military officers, guardsmen, ministers, counselors, rulers, tax beneficiaries, and princes. That’s what he obtains as king. And what does he obtain as Buddha? He has a persuasive voice. His words are persuasive to monks, nuns, laymen, laywomen, gods, humans, titans, dragons, and centaurs. That’s what he obtains as Buddha.” The Buddha spoke this matter. 2.23.1

On this it is said: 2.24.1

“He never spoke a loud harsh word,
insulting, quarrelsome,
causing harm, rude, crushing the people.
His speech was sweet, helpful, and courteous. 2.24.2

He uttered words dear to the mind,
going to the heart, pleasing to the ear.
He enjoyed the fruit of his good verbal conduct,
experiencing the fruit of good deeds in heaven. 2.24.6

- 2.24.10 Having experienced that fruit,
on his return to here he acquired the voice of Brahmā.
His tongue was long and wide,
and his speech was persuasive.
- 2.24.14 Even as householder his speech brings prosperity.
But if that man goes forth,
speaking often to the people,
they'll be persuaded by his fair words."

30. A Lion-Like Jaw

- 2.25.1 "Mendicants, in some past lives the Realized One was reborn as a human being. He refrained from talking nonsense. His words were timely, true, and meaningful, in line with the teaching and training. He said things at the right time which were valuable, reasonable, succinct, and beneficial. Due to performing those deeds he was reborn in a heavenly realm. When he came back to this state of existence he obtained this mark: his jaw is like that of a lion.²⁴⁹
- 2.26.1 Possessing this mark, if he stays at home he becomes a wheel-turning monarch. And what does he obtain as king? He can't be destroyed by any human foe or enemy. That's what he obtains as king. And what does he obtain as Buddha? He can't be destroyed by any foe or enemy whether internal or external; nor by greed, hate, or delusion; nor by any ascetic or brahmin or god or Māra or Brahmā or by anyone in the world. That's what he obtains as Buddha." The Buddha spoke this matter.
- 2.27.1 On this it is said:
- 2.27.2 "Neither nonsensical nor silly,
his way of speaking was never loose.
He eliminated what was useless,

249. The commentary explains that those who flap their mouths with nonsensical gossip end up with weak or misshapen jaws.

and spoke for the welfare
and happiness of the people.

So doing he passed from here to be reborn in heaven, 2.27.6
where he enjoyed the fruit of deeds well done.
Passing away, on his return to here,
he gained a jaw like the finest of beasts.

He became a king so very hard to defeat, 2.27.10
a mighty lord and ruler of men.
He was equal to the best
in the city of the Three and Thirty,
like Indra, the finest of gods.

One such as that is not easily beaten by centaurs, 2.27.14
demons, spirits, monsters, or gods.
If he becomes of such a kind,
he illuminates the quarters and in-between.”

31–32. Even and White Teeth

“Mendicants, in some past lives the Realized One was reborn as a 2.28.1
human being. He gave up wrong livelihood and earned a living
by right livelihood. He refrained from falsifying weights, metals,
or measures; bribery, fraud, cheating, and duplicity; mutilation,
murder, abduction, banditry, plunder, and violence. Due to per-
forming, accumulating, heaping up, and amassing those deeds,
when his body broke up, after death, he was reborn in a good
place, a heavenly realm. There he surpassed the other gods in ten
respects: divine life span, beauty, happiness, glory, sovereignty,
sights, sounds, smells, tastes, and touches. When he came back to
this state of existence he obtained these two marks: his teeth are
even and perfectly white.²⁵⁰

250. His teeth are not “crooked” or “stained” by corruption.

2.29.1 Possessing these marks, if he stays at home he becomes a king, a wheel-turning monarch, a just and principled king. His dominion extends to all four sides, he achieves stability in the country, and he possesses the seven treasures. He has the following seven treasures: the wheel, the elephant, the horse, the jewel, the woman, the treasurer, and the counselor as the seventh treasure. He has over a thousand sons who are valiant and heroic, crushing the armies of his enemies. After conquering this land girt by sea—free of harassment by bandits, successful and prosperous, safe, blessed, and untroubled—he reigns by principle, without rod or sword.²⁵¹ And what does he obtain as king? His retinue is pure. This includes brahmins and householders, people of town and country, treasury officials, military officers, guardsmen, ministers, counselors, rulers, tax beneficiaries, and princes. That’s what he obtains as king.

2.30.1 But if he goes forth from the lay life to homelessness, he becomes a perfected one, a fully awakened Buddha, who draws back the veil from the world. And what does he obtain as Buddha? His retinue is pure. This includes monks, nuns, laymen, laywomen, gods, humans, titans, dragons, and centaurs. That’s what he obtains as Buddha.” The Buddha spoke this matter.

2.31.1 On this it is said:

2.31.2 “He abandoned wrong livelihood, and created
a way of life that’s fair, pure, and just.
He eliminated what was useless,
and lived for the welfare and happiness of the people.

2.31.6 Having done what’s praised
by the clever, the wise, and the good,
that man experienced the fruit in heaven.
Equal to the best in the heaven of Three and Thirty,
he enjoyed himself with pleasure and play.

251. The commentary explain *akhilamanimittamakaṇṭakam* as “free of bandits” (*niccoram*).

From there he passed back to a human life. 2.31.10

With the remaining ripening
of the fruit of good deeds,
he obtained teeth that are even,
gleaming, bright, and white.

Many soothsayers regarded as wise men 2.31.14

gathered and predicted of him:
‘With twice-born teeth
so even, so white, so clean and bright
his retinue will be so pure.

As king, his people will also be pure, 2.31.18

when he rules having conquered this earth so broad.
They won’t harm the country,
but will live for the welfare
and happiness of the people.

But if he goes forth he’ll be an ascetic free of ill, 2.31.22

his passions quelled, the veil drawn back.
Rid of stress and weariness,
he sees this world and the next.

Those who do his bidding, both lay and renunciate, 2.31.26

shake off wickedness, impure and blameworthy.
He’s surrounded by pure people, who dispel
stains, callousness, sin, and corruptions.’”

That is what the Buddha said. Satisfied, the mendicants ap- 2.31.30
proved what the Buddha said.

DN 31

Advice to Sigālaka

Sigālāsutta

- 1.1 SO I HAVE HEARD. At one time the Buddha was staying near Rājagaha, in the Bamboo Grove, the squirrels' feeding ground. Now at that time the householder's son Sigālaka rose early and left Rājagaha. With his clothes and hair all wet, he raised his joined palms to revere the various quarters—²⁵² east, south, west, north, below, and above.²⁵³
- 2.1 Then the Buddha robed up in the morning and, taking his bowl and robe, entered Rājagaha for alms. He saw Sigālaka revering the quarters and said to him, "Householder's son, why are you revering the quarters in this way?"

252. Sigālaka only appears in this sutta. His name means "little jackal".

253. Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa 5.5.1 recommends offerings to Agni in the east, Indra or Soma in the south, the All-gods in the west, Mitra and Varuṇa in the north, and Bṛhaspati in the middle. The quarters themselves are divine, since one can travel them and never reach the end (Bṛhadāraṇyaka Upaniṣad 4.1.5). Atharva Veda 12.3.7–10 gives a domestic prayer for the quarters; here Yama dwells in the south with the Fathers, while Soma is in the west, and the other directions are not associated with specific deities. In Buddhism, the quarters are said to be inhabited by the respective Four Great Kings as per DN 32.

“Sir, on his deathbed my father said to me: ‘My dear, please 2.7
revere the quarters.’²⁵⁴ Honoring, respecting, and venerating my
father’s words, I rose early and left Rājagaha and, with my clothes
and hair all wet, raised my joined palms to revere the various quar-
ters—east, south, west, north, below, and above.”

1. The Six Directions

“Householder’s son, that’s not how the six directions should be 2.12
revered in the training of the Noble One.”²⁵⁵

“But sir, how should the six directions be revered in the training 2.13
of the Noble One? Sir, please teach me this.”

“Well then, householder’s son, listen and apply your mind well, 2.15
I will speak.”

“Yes, sir,” replied Sigālaka. The Buddha said this: 2.16

“Householder’s son, a noble disciple gives up four corrupt deeds, 3.1
doesn’t do bad deeds on four grounds, and avoids six drains on
wealth. When they’ve left these fourteen bad things behind they
have the six directions covered.²⁵⁶ They’re practicing to win in
both worlds, and they succeed in this world and the next. When
their body breaks up, after death, they’re reborn in a good place, a
heavenly realm.

254. Sigālaka followed blindly without considering the meaning as urged by Chāndogya Upaniṣad 1.3.11.

255. It is unusual to find “six” directions. Normally it is four, then eight (with intermediate directions), then ten (above and below). Praśna Upaniṣad 1.6 lists the six, then the intermediates.

256. The Buddha outlines the contents of the discourse to follow.

2. Four Corrupt Deeds

- 3.5 What four corrupt deeds have they given up?²⁵⁷ Killing living creatures, stealing, sexual misconduct, and lying: these are corrupt deeds. These are the four corrupt deeds they've given up.”
- 3.8 That is what the Buddha said. Then the Holy One, the Teacher, went on to say:
- 4.1 “Killing, stealing,
telling lies,
and committing adultery:
astute people don't praise these things.”

3. Four Grounds

- 5.1 “On what four grounds do they not do bad deeds?²⁵⁸ One does bad deeds prejudiced by favoritism, hostility, stupidity, and cowardice. When a noble disciple is not prejudiced by favoritism, hostility, stupidity, and cowardice, they don't do bad deeds on these four grounds.”
- 5.5 That is what the Buddha said. Then the Holy One, the Teacher, went on to say:
- 6.1 “If you act against the teaching
out of favoritism, hostility, cowardice, or stupidity,
your fame shrinks,
like the moon in the waning fortnight.
- 6.5 If you don't act against the teaching
out of favoritism, hostility, cowardice, and stupidity,
your fame swells,
like the moon in the waxing fortnight.”

257. The teaching is structured to reinforce memorization. Give the number of items (twice), so you will notice if any are missing; list the items; recapitulate the numbers; then recapitulate the items once more in verse.

258. First we learned what the bad deeds were, now we learn why people do them.

4. Six Drains on Wealth

“What six drains on wealth do they avoid?”²⁵⁹ Habitually engaging in 7.1
the following things is a drain on wealth: drinking alcohol; roaming
the streets at night; frequenting festivals; gambling; bad friends;
laziness.

5. Six Drawbacks of Drinking

There are these six drawbacks of habitually drinking alcohol.²⁶⁰ 8.1
Immediate loss of wealth, promotion of quarrels, susceptibility
to illness, disrepute, indecent exposure; and weakened wisdom is
the sixth thing. These are the six drawbacks of habitually drinking
alcohol.

6. Six Drawbacks of Roaming the Streets at Night

There are these six drawbacks of roaming the streets at night. Your- 9.1
self, your partners and children, and your property are all left un-
guarded. You’re suspected of bad deeds. Untrue rumors spread
about you. You’re at the forefront of many things that entail suffer-
ing. These are the six drawbacks of roaming the streets at night.

7. Six Drawbacks of Festivals

There are these six drawbacks of frequenting festivals. You’re always 10.1
thinking: ‘Where’s the dancing? Where’s the singing? Where’s
the music? Where are the stories? Where’s the applause? Where

259. “Drains on wealth” is *apāyamukha*, literally “openings for departure”. This is emphasized here since Sigālaka wants to be a good son and not squander the family fortune.

260. Now each of the six drains on wealth are expanded and explained.

are the kettledrums?’ These are the six drawbacks of frequenting festivals.

8. Six Drawbacks of Gambling

- 11.1 There are these six drawbacks of habitually gambling. Victory breeds enmity. The loser mourns their money. There is immediate loss of wealth. A gambler’s word carries no weight in public assembly. Friends and colleagues treat them with contempt. And no-one wants to marry a gambler, for they think: ‘This individual is a gambler—they’re not able to support a partner.’ These are the six drawbacks of habitually gambling.

9. Six Drawbacks of Bad Friends

- 12.1 There are these six drawbacks of bad friends. You become friends and companions with those who are addicts, carousers, drunkards, frauds, swindlers, and thugs. These are the six drawbacks of bad friends.

10. Six Drawbacks of Laziness

- 13.1 There are these six drawbacks of habitual laziness. You don’t get your work done because you think: ‘It’s too cold! It’s too hot. It’s too late! It’s too early! I’m too hungry! I’m too full!’ By dwelling on so many excuses for not working, you don’t make any more money, and the money you already have runs out. These are the six drawbacks of habitual laziness.”
- 13.5 That is what the Buddha said. Then the Holy One, the Teacher, went on to say:
- 14.1 “Some are just drinking buddies,
some call you their dear, dear friend,
but a true friend is one
who stands by you in need.

- Sleeping late, adultery, 14.5
 making enemies, harmfulness,
 bad friends, and avarice:
 these six grounds ruin a person.
- With bad friends, bad companions, 14.9
 bad behavior and alms-resort,
 a man falls to ruin
 in both this world and the next.
- Dice, women, drink, song and dance; 14.13
 sleeping by day and roaming at night;
 bad friends, and avarice:
 these six grounds ruin a person.
- They play dice and drink liquor, 14.17
 and consort with women loved by others.
 Associating with the worse, not the better,
 they diminish like the waning moon.
- A drunkard, broke, and destitute, 14.21
 thirsty, drinking in the bar,
 drowning in debt,
 will quickly lose their way.²⁶¹
- When you're in the habit of sleeping late, 14.25
 seeing night as time to rise,
 and always getting drunk,
 you can't keep up the household life.
- 'Too cold, too hot, 14.29
 too late,' they say.
 When the young neglect their work like this,
 riches pass them by.²⁶²

261. *Kāhiti* is third person singular future of *karoti*.

262. The subcommentary explains *atthā* as *dhanā* ("riches").

- 14.33 But one who considers heat and cold
as nothing more than blades of grass—
he does his duties as a man,
and happiness never fails.”

11. Fake Friends

- 15.1 “Householder’s son, you should recognize these four enemies disguised as friends: the taker, the talker, the flatterer, the spender.
- 16.1 You can recognize a fake friend who’s all take on four grounds.
- 16.2 Your possessions end up theirs.
Giving little, they expect a lot.
They do their duty out of fear.
They associate for their own advantage.
- 16.6 You can recognize a fake friend who’s all take on these four grounds.
- 17.1 You can recognize a fake friend who’s all talk on four grounds. They’re hospitable in the past. They’re hospitable in the future. They’re full of meaningless pleasantries. When something needs doing in the present they point to their own misfortune. You can recognize a fake friend who’s all talk on these four grounds.
- 18.1 You can recognize a fake friend who’s a flatterer on four grounds. They support you equally in doing bad and doing good. They praise you to your face, and put you down behind your back. You can recognize a fake friend who’s a flatterer on these four grounds.
- 19.1 You can recognize a fake friend who’s a spender on four grounds. They accompany you when drinking, roaming the streets at night, frequenting festivals, and gambling. You can recognize a fake friend who’s a spender on these four grounds.”
- 19.4 That is what the Buddha said. Then the Holy One, the Teacher, went on to say:
- 20.1 “One friend is all take,

another all talk;
one's just a flatterer,
and one's a friend who spends.

An astute person understands
these four enemies for what they are
and keeps them at a distance,
as they'd shun a risky road."

20.5

12. Good-Hearted Friends

"Householder's son, you should recognize these four good-hearted friends: the helper, the friend in good times and bad, the counselor, and the one who's compassionate. 21.1

You can recognize a good-hearted friend who's a helper on four grounds. They guard you when you're negligent. They guard your property when you're negligent. They keep you safe in times of danger. When something needs doing, they provide you with twice the money you need. You can recognize a good-hearted friend who's a helper on these four grounds. 22.1

You can recognize a good-hearted friend who's the same in good times and bad on four grounds. They tell you secrets. They keep your secrets. They don't abandon you in times of trouble. They'd even give their life for your welfare. You can recognize a good-hearted friend who's the same in good times and bad on these four grounds. 23.1

You can recognize a good-hearted friend who's a counselor on four grounds. They keep you from doing bad. They support you in doing good. They teach you what you do not know. They explain the path to heaven. You can recognize a good-hearted friend who's a counselor on these four grounds. 24.1

You can recognize a good-hearted friend who's compassionate on four grounds. They don't delight in your misfortune. They delight in your good fortune. They keep others from criticizing 25.1

you. They encourage praise of you. You can recognize a good-hearted friend who's compassionate on these four grounds."

25.4 The Buddha spoke this matter. Then the Holy One, the Teacher, went on to say:

26.1 "A friend who's a helper,
one the same in both pleasure and pain,
a friend of good counsel,
and one of compassion;

26.5 an astute person understands
these four friends for what they are
and carefully looks after them,
like a mother the child at her breast.
The astute and virtuous
shine like a burning flame.

26.11 They pick up riches as bees
roaming round pick up pollen.
And their riches proceed to grow,
like an termite mound piling up.

26.15 In gathering wealth like this,
a householder does enough for their family.
And they'd hold on to friends
by dividing their wealth in four.

26.19 One portion is to enjoy.
Two parts invest in work.
And the fourth should be kept
for times of trouble."

13. Covering the Six Directions

“And how, householder’s son, does a noble disciple cover the six directions?²⁶³ These six directions should be recognized: parents as the east, teachers as the south, partner and children as the west, friends and colleagues as the north, bondservants and workers as beneath, and ascetics and brahmins as above.²⁶⁴ 27.1

A child should serve their parents as the eastern quarter in five ways, thinking: ‘I will support those who supported me. I’ll do my duty for them. I’ll maintain the family lineage. I’ll take care of the inheritance. When they have passed away, I’ll make an offering on their behalf.’ Parents served by the children in these five ways show compassion to them in five ways. They keep them from doing bad. They support them in doing good. They train them in a profession. They connect them with a suitable partner. They transfer the inheritance in due time. Parents served by their children in these five ways show compassion to them in these five ways. And that’s how the eastern quarter is covered, kept safe and free of peril. 28.1

A student should serve their teacher as the southern quarter in five ways: by rising for them, by serving them, by listening well, by looking after them, and by carefully learning their profession. Teachers served by their students in these five ways show compassion to them in five ways. They make sure they’re well educated and well drilled in memorization. They clearly explain all the knowledge of the profession. They introduce them to their friends and 29.1

263. Having explained the six drains on wealth, the Buddha moves on to the next item in the table of contents.

264. Parents are in the east because that is where the sun is born. Teachers are to the south (*dakkhiṇā*) as they are owed an offering (*dakkhiṇā*). Family is one’s legacy, so they lie with the setting sun in the west. Good friends keep you on the upright way to the north. Servants support you and make your life possible, like the earth below. And spiritual teachers lead you to heaven or transcendence above.

colleagues. They provide protection in every region.²⁶⁵ Teachers served by their students in these five ways show compassion to them in these five ways. And that's how the southern quarter is covered, kept safe and free of peril.

30.1 A husband should serve his wife as the western quarter in five ways: by treating her with honor, by not looking down on her, by not being unfaithful, by relinquishing authority to her, and by presenting her with adornments.²⁶⁶ A wife served by her husband in these five ways shows compassion to him in five ways. She's well-organized in her work. She manages the domestic help. She's not unfaithful. She preserves his earnings. She's deft and tireless in all her duties. A wife served by her husband in these five ways shows compassion to him in these five ways. And that's how the western quarter is covered, kept safe and free of peril.

31.1 A gentleman should serve his friends and colleagues as the northern quarter in five ways: giving, kindly words, taking care, equality, and not using tricky words. Friends and colleagues served by a gentleman in these five ways show compassion to him in five ways. They guard him when they're negligent. They guard his property when they're negligent. They keep him safe in times of danger. They don't abandon him in times of trouble. They honor his descendants. Friends and colleagues served by a gentleman in these five ways show compassion to him in these five ways. And that's how the northern quarter is covered, kept safe and free of peril.

32.1 A master should serve their bondservants and workers as the lower quarter in five ways: by organizing work according to ability, by paying food and wages, by nursing them when sick, by sharing special treats, and by giving time off work. Bondservants and workers served by a master in these five ways show compassion to him in five ways. They get up first, and go to bed last. They don't steal.

265. "Protection in every region" (*disāsu parittāṇaṃ*) refers to when the student has completed their studies and goes off to travel, the teacher does what they can to ensure their safety in other regions.

266. Marriage is based on mutual care and respect, not on dominance and obedience.

They do their work well. And they promote a good reputation. Bondservants and workers served by a master in these five ways show compassion to him in these five ways. And that's how the lower quarter is covered, kept safe and free of peril.

A gentleman should serve ascetics and brahmins as the upper quarter in five ways: by loving deeds of body, speech, and mind, by not turning them away at the gate, and by providing them with material needs. Ascetics and brahmins served by a gentleman in these five ways show compassion to him in six ways. They keep him from doing bad. They support him in doing good. They think of him with kindly thoughts. They teach him what he does not know. They clarify what he's already learned. They explain the path to heaven. Ascetics and brahmins served by a gentleman in these five ways show compassion to him in these six ways. And that's how the upper quarter is covered, kept safe and free of peril.”

The Buddha spoke this matter. Then the Holy One, the Teacher, went on to say:

“Parents are the east,
teachers the south,
wives and child the west,
friends and colleagues the north,

servants and workers below,
and ascetics and brahmins above.
By honoring these quarters
a householder does enough for their family.

The astute and the virtuous,
the gentle and the articulate,
the humble and the kind:
they're the kind who win glory.

The diligent, not lazy,
those not disturbed by troubles,
those consistent in conduct, the intelligent:

they're the kind who win glory.

34.17 The inclusive, the makers of friends,
the bountiful, those rid of stinginess,
those who lead, train, and persuade:
they're the kind who win glory.

34.21 Giving and kindly words,
taking care here,
and treating equally in worldly conditions,
as befits them in each case;
these ways of being inclusive in the world
are like a moving chariot's linchpin.

34.27 If there were no such ways of being inclusive,
neither mother nor father
would be respected and honored
for what they've done for their children.

34.31 But since these ways of being inclusive do exist,
the astute do regard them well,
so they achieve greatness
and are praised."

35.1 When this was said, Sigālaka the householder's son said to the Buddha, "Excellent, sir! Excellent! As if he were righting the over-turned, or revealing the hidden, or pointing out the path to the lost, or lighting a lamp in the dark so people with clear eyes can see what's there, the Buddha has made the teaching clear in many ways. I go for refuge to the Buddha, to the teaching, and to the mendicant Saṅgha. From this day forth, may the Buddha remember me as a lay follower who has gone for refuge for life."

DN 32

The Āṭānāṭiya Protection

Āṭānāṭiyasutta

1. The First Recitation Section

SO I HAVE HEARD.²⁶⁷ At one time the Buddha was staying near 1.1
Rājagaha, on the Vulture’s Peak Mountain. Then, late at night, the
Four Great Kings—with large armies of spirits, centaurs, goblins,
and dragons—set guards, troops, and wards at the four quarters
and then, lighting up the entire Vulture’s Peak with their beauty,
went up to the Buddha, bowed, and sat down to one side. Before
sitting down to one side, some spirits bowed, some exchanged
greetings and polite conversation, some held up their joined palms
toward the Buddha, some announced their name and clan, while
some kept silent.

Seated to one side, the Great King Vessavaṇa said to the Bud- 2.1
dha,²⁶⁸ “Sir, some high spirits have confidence in the Buddha, some
do not. Some middling spirits have confidence in the Buddha,
some do not. Some low spirits have confidence in the Buddha,

267. This discourse bears similarities to the Mahāsamayasutta (DN 20). Thematically, that discourse is about the devotion of the deities, whereas this is about protection for the mendicants. | I believe this is only place in whole canon that lists the *bhāṇavāra* at the start.

268. Here Kuvera is called Vessavaṇa, which our text below explains as being derived from the name of his city.

some do not. But mostly the spirits don't have confidence in the Buddha. Why is that? Because the Buddha teaches them to refrain from killing living creatures, stealing, lying, sexual misconduct, and drinking alcohol. But mostly they don't refrain from such things. They don't like that or approve of it.

2.13 Sir, there are disciples of the Buddha who frequent remote lodgings in the wilderness and the forest that are quiet and still, far from the madding crowd, remote from human settlements, and fit for retreat. There dwell high spirits who have no confidence in the Buddha's dispensation. To give them confidence, may the Buddha please learn the Āṭānāṭiya protection for the guarding, protection, safety, and comfort of the monks, nuns, laymen, and laywomen." The Buddha consented with silence.

3.1 Then, knowing that the Buddha had consented, on that occasion Great King Vessavaṇa recited the Āṭānāṭiya protection.²⁶⁹

3.2 "Hail Vipassī,²⁷⁰
the glorious Clear-eyed One!
Hail Sikhī,
compassionate for all beings!

3.6 Hail Vessabhū,
cleansed and austere!
Hail Kakusandha,
crusher of Māra's army!

3.10 Hail Koṇāgamana,
the brahmin who has lived the life!
Hail Kassapa,
everywhere free!

269. "Protection" is *rakkhā*, which is a synonym of *paritta*.

270. For these verses, I lean heavily on the translation by Ānandajoti, *The Āṭānāṭiya Discourse*. They are commonly recited in Theravada countries today. The recital begins with the seven Buddhas, for which see DN 14.

Hail Aṅgīrasa,²⁷¹ 3.14
 the glorious Sakyan!
 He taught this Dhamma
 that dispels all suffering.

Those in the world who are extinguished, 3.18
 truly discerning,
 not backbiters; such people
 being great of heart and rid of naivety,

revere that Gotama; 3.22
 he who is helpful to gods and humans,
 accomplished in knowledge and conduct,
 great of heart and rid of naivety.

Where rises the sun—²⁷² 4.1
 Aditi's child, the great orb,
 who in his rising
 dispels the night,
 and of whom, when sun has risen,
 it is said to be the day—

there is a deep lake, 4.7
 an ocean of flowing waters.
 That's how they understand that lake there,²⁷³
 as an ocean of flowing waters.

From here that is the eastern quarter, 4.11
 so the people say.

271. Here Aṅgīrasa is used as a name rather than a descriptive epithet. Aṅgīras was one of the Vedic sages and the Aṅgīrasas are his descendants. Aṅgīras is regarded as the *pravara* or revered ancestor of the Gotama clan. Both names are associated with light: *aṅgīrasa* shares a root and is often synonymous with *agni* ("fire"), while *gotama* means "light dispelling dark".

272. Here begins a series of verses dedicated to the divinities in each of the four quarters, proceeding in the standard way: east, south, west, north.

273. This is according to the commentary (*taṃ rahadaṃ tattha evaṃ jānanti*).

- That quarter is warded
by a great king, glorious,
- 4.15 the lord of the centaurs;
his name is Dhataratṭha.
He delights in song and dance,
honored by the centaurs.
- 4.19 And he has many mighty sons
all of one name, so I’ve heard.
Eighty, and ten, and one—
all of them named Indra.
- 4.23 After seeing the Awakened One,
the Buddha, kinsman of the Sun,
they revere him from afar,
the one great of heart and rid of naivety.
- 4.27 Homage to you, O thoroughbred!
Homage to you, supreme among men!
You examine us skillfully;²⁷⁴
the non-humans bow to you.
We’ve been asked many a time,
‘Do you bow to Gotama the victor?’
- 4.33 And so we ought to declare:
‘We bow to Gotama the victor,
accomplished in knowledge and conduct!
We bow to Gotama the awakened!’

274. This relates back to the basic problem facing the *yakkhas*: shame. They know what they do is wrong, but they like it and hence feel shame when hearing the Dhamma. But the Buddha treats them with respect, without shaming or bias, and thus is able to lead them to the good. The commentary implicitly connects this line with DN 30:2.1.2, where the Buddha “examines” (*samakkhati*) the population for their individual and shared traits.

- It's where the departed go, they say,²⁷⁵ 5.1
 who are dividers and backbiters,
 killers and hunters,
 bandits and frauds.
- From here that is the southern quarter, 5.5
 so the people say.
 That quarter is warded
 by a great king, glorious,
- the lord of the goblins; 5.9
 his name is Virūḷha.
 He delights in song and dance,
 honored by the goblins.
- And he has many mighty sons 5.13
 all of one name, so I've heard.
 Eighty, and ten, and one—
 all of them named Indra.
- After seeing the Awakened One, 5.17
 the Buddha, kinsman of the Sun,
 they revere him from afar,
 the one great of heart and rid of naivety.
- Homage to you, O thoroughbred! 5.21
 Homage to you, supreme among men!
 You examine us skillfully;
 the non-humans bow to you.
 We've been asked many a time,
 'Do you bow to Gotama the victor?'
- And so we ought to declare: 5.27

275. The south has the shortest and least auspicious description. To the extent that it relates to physical geography, this echoes the perception of northerners at the time that the south of India lay outside the "civilized" realms (*āryāvarta*).

‘We bow to Gotama the victor,
accomplished in knowledge and conduct!
We bow to Gotama the awakened!’

- 6.1 Where sets the sun—²⁷⁶
Aditi’s child, the great orb,
who in his setting
ends the day,
and of whom, when sun has set,
it is said to be the night—
- 6.7 there is a deep lake in that place,
an ocean of flowing waters.
That’s how they understand that lake there,
as an ocean of flowing waters.
- 6.11 From here that is the western quarter,
so the people say.
That quarter is warded
by a great king, glorious,
- 6.15 the lord of the dragons;
his name is Virūpakkha.
He delights in song and dance,
honored by the dragons.
- 6.19 And he has many mighty sons
all of one name, so I’ve heard.
Eighty, and ten, and one—
all of them named Indra.
- 6.23 After seeing the Awakened One,
the Buddha, kinsman of the Sun,
they revere him from afar,
the one great of heart and rid of naivety.

276. The description of the west mirrors the east.

Homage to you, O thoroughbred! 6.27
 Homage to you, supreme among men!
 You examine us skillfully;
 the non-humans bow to you.
 We've been asked many a time,
 'Do you bow to Gotama the victor?'

And so we ought to declare: 6.33
 'We bow to Gotama the victor,
 accomplished in knowledge and conduct!
 We bow to Gotama the awakened!'

Where lovely Uttarakuru is,²⁷⁷ 7.1
 and the beautiful Mount Meru,²⁷⁸
 humans born there
 are unselfish, without possessions.²⁷⁹

They do not sow the seed, 7.5
 nor do they draw the plough.
 The rice eaten by people²⁸⁰
 ripens in untilled soil,

free of powder or husk, pure, 7.9
 fragrant, with only the rice-grain.

277. The description of the north is by far the most elaborate. | "Uttarakuru" is literally "north Kuru". It is mentioned in Sanskrit and Greek literature, where it sometimes appears as an actual country and other times as a place of fantasy. Attempts to locate it in a specific region in or beyond the Himalayas have proven inconclusive.

278. Meru is another place that appears sometimes as a physical mountain and other times purely mystical. As home of the gods (Snp 3.11:4.3), its peak is accessible only by psychic powers (Thig 14.1:19.3, MN 50:30.1). It is the center of the world in Buddhist, Hindu, and Jain cosmologies. Today it is sometimes identified with Mount Kailash.

279. This agrees with the description at AN 9.21:1.3.

280. Due to their lack of selfishness, they live in a kinder state of nature, which we selfish humans have lost (DN 27:16.1).

- After cooking in a tandoor oven,²⁸¹
they enjoy eating that food.
- 7.13 Having prepared a cow with hooves uncloven,²⁸²
they're drawn about from place to place.
Having prepared a beast with hooves uncloven,
they're drawn about from place to place.
- 7.17 Having prepared a woman-drawn carriage,²⁸³
they're drawn about from place to place.
Having prepared a man-drawn carriage,
they're drawn about from place to place.
- 7.21 Having prepared a girl-drawn carriage,
they're drawn about from place to place.
Having prepared a boy-drawn carriage,
they're drawn about from place to place.
- 7.25 Having ascended their vehicle,
that king's servants
tour about in every quarter,
- 7.28 provided with vehicles,
elephant, horse, and divine.
And there are mansions and palanquins
for that great and glorious king.
- 7.32 And he has cities, too,
well-built in the sky:

281. *Tuṇḍikīre* is explained by the commentary as “firestone”. In the notes to his translation, Walshe suggests a relation with tandoor, which has been found as far back as the Indus Valley Civilization, a millennium before the Buddha.

282. Cloven and uncloven was an important classification of animals in the Dharmaśāstras.

283. The commentary says they were mostly carried on the backs of pregnant women (!). But the verb *anuyanti* indicates, rather, that they were “drawn along after”, which suggests a rickshaw.

Ātānātā, Kusinātā, Parakusinātā,²⁸⁴
Nāṭapuriyā, and Parakusiṭanātā.²⁸⁵

To the north is Kapīvanta,²⁸⁶ 7.36
and Janogha lies beyond.²⁸⁷
And there's Navanavutiya, Ambara-ambaravatiya,²⁸⁸
and the royal capital named Ālakamandā.²⁸⁹

The Great King Kuvera, dear sir, 7.40
has a capital named Visāṇā,²⁹⁰
which is why the great king
is called 'Vessavaṇa'.

These each individually inform the King: 7.44

284. The discourse is named after the first of these cities. The name is hard to explain, but all the names in this series have the element *nāṭa*, which is probably the name of the people. One meaning of *nāṭa* is “dance”, and one of the unique features of this discourse is that each of the Four Great Kings is said to delight in song and dance. There is a long history of dancing divinities in India, and images of dancers go back as far as the Indus Valley Civilization. If we take *nāṭa* in the sense “the people of the dance”, *kusinātā* would therefore be “dancers of the grass” after the *kusa* grass essential to the Vedic rites of kingship. *Parakusinātā* is the “further dancers of the grass”, and *parakusiṭanātā* is probably a variation on that. *Nāṭapuriyā* is the “citadel of the dancers”. Each of these associates the people of the dance with the idea of protection or authority, agreeing with the context, where the cities are said to belong to a great king. Thus the prefix *ātā-* probably stems from *tāṇa* (“shelter, refuge”; the same root as *paritta*), in the sense of the “refuge of the dancers”.

285. Adopt the reading *nāṭapuriyā* found in Sinhalese-script manuscripts against the Mahāsaṅgīti's *nāṭasuriyā*.

286. “Abounding in monkeys”.

287. “Flood of folk”.

288. *Navanavutiya* is “the city of the ninety-nine” i.e. three times thirty-three. | *Ambara* is “sky”.

289. Also encountered at DN 17:1.3.8 and DN 16:5.18.5. *Alakā* is the capital of Kuvera in Sanskrit sources.

290. The city *Visāṇa* is not encountered elsewhere, but it means “horn”, possibly reinforcing the importance of “song and dance”.

Tatolā, Tattalā, Tatotalā,²⁹¹
 Ojasi, Tejasi, Tatojasi,²⁹²
 Sūra, Rājā, Ariṭṭha, and Nemi.²⁹³

- 7.48 There is a lake there too named Dharanī,²⁹⁴
 whence the clouds rain down,
 and the rains disperse.
 There is a hall there too named Sālavatī,²⁹⁵
- 7.52 where the spirits frequent.
 There the trees are ever in fruit,
 with many different flocks of birds.
 Peacocks and herons call out there,
 and the sweet cuckoos too.
- 7.57 One bird cries out ‘Live, live!’,
 another ‘Lift up your heart!’
 There are cocks and kookaburras,²⁹⁶
 and in the wood the woodpeckers.²⁹⁷
- 7.61 The parrots and mynah cry out there,
 and the ‘little stick-boy’ birds.

291. These three names appear to be purely onomatopoeic, perhaps echoing musical sounds.

292. These names suggest a connection with sustenance: “Nutritive”, “Powerful”, “Nourished by That”.

293. These are all heroic or royal names: “Sun”, “King”, “Unharméd”, “Rim” (evoking the Wheel).

294. *Dharanī* the “bearer” is also a pregnant woman or Mother Earth.

295. *Sāla* means “hall” or “sal tree”, but the commentary says it was surrounded by creepers of that name.

296. *Kuḷirakā* appears to be the name of a crab-eating bird (*kuḷira*). In honor of my native country, I name it after the kookaburra, which eats crabs and is renowned for its cry.

297. In Ja 547:426.2 we find *koṭṭhā pokkharasātakā*, where the *koṭṭha* is evidently a woodpecker. *Satapatta* can mean woodpecker or lotus (or crane or peacock), and perhaps there is an association here, the “hundred-leaved [bird] of the lotus pond”.

Kuvera's pond of rushes
is lovely all the time.

From here that is the northern quarter, 7.65
so the people say.
That quarter is warded
by a great king, glorious,

the lord of spirits; 7.69
his name is Kuvera.
He delights in song and dance,
honored by the spirits.

And he has many mighty sons 7.73
all of one name, so I've heard.
Eighty, and ten, and one—
all of them named Indra.

After seeing the Awakened One, 7.77
the Buddha, kinsman of the Sun,
they revere him from afar,
the one great of heart and rid of naivety.

Homage to you, O thoroughbred! 7.81
Homage to you, supreme among men!
You examine us skillfully;
the non-humans bow to you.
We've been asked many a time,
'Do you bow to Gotama the victor?'

And so we ought to declare: 7.87
'We bow to Gotama the victor,
accomplished in knowledge and conduct!
We bow to Gotama the awakened!'

8.1 This, dear sir, is the Āṭānāṭiya protection for the guarding, protection, safety, and comfort of the monks, nuns, laymen, and laywomen.

8.2 The monks, nuns, laymen, and laywomen should learn this Āṭānāṭiya protection well and completely memorize it. If anyone who does so is approached while walking, standing, sitting, or lying down by any non-human being with malicious intent—including males, females, boys, girls, ministers, counselors, and servants among the spirits, centaurs, goblins, and dragons—that non-human will receive no homage or respect in any village or town. And they will receive no ground or dwelling in my capital of Ālakamandā. Nor will they get to go to the conference of the spirits. In addition, the non-humans would not give or take them in marriage. They'd heap personal abuse on them, drop an empty bowl on their head, and even split their head into seven pieces!

9.1 For there are, dear sir, non-humans who are fierce, cruel, and violent. They don't obey the Great Kings or their men or their men's men. They're said to be rebelling against the Great Kings. They're just like the bandits in the king of Magadha's realm who don't obey the king, his men, or his men's men, and are said to be rebelling against the king.

9.6 If any non-human being with malicious intent—including males, females, boys, girls, ministers, counselors, and servants among the spirits, centaurs, goblins, and dragons—approaches a monk, nun, layman, or laywoman while walking, standing, sitting, or lying down, one ought to yell, cry, and scream to the spirits, great spirits, generals, great generals: 'This spirit's got me! This spirit's entered me! This spirit's annoying me! This spirit's harassing me! This spirit's hurting me! This spirit's harming me! This spirit won't let me go!'

10.1 To what spirits, great spirits, generals, great generals?

10.2 'Indra, Soma, and Varuṇa,²⁹⁸

298. For these gods, see my comment on DN 13:25.2. Here I will comment on the names not discussed elsewhere, especially in DN 20.

Bhāradvāja, the Progenitor,²⁹⁹
Candana and Kāmaseṭṭha,
Kinnughanḍu and Nighanḍu,

Panāda and Opamañña, 10.6
and Mātali, the god's charioteer.
Cittasena the centaur,
and the kings Nala and Janesabha,

Sātāgira, Hemavata, 10.10
Puṇṇaka, Karatiya, and Guḷa;³⁰⁰
Sivaka and Mucalinda,³⁰¹
Vessāmita, Yugandhara,³⁰²

Gopāla, Suppagedha,³⁰³ 10.14
Hiri, Netti, and Mandiya;³⁰⁴
Pañcālacaṇḍa, Āḷavaka,³⁰⁵
Pajjunna, Sumana, Sumukha,³⁰⁶

299. This is presumably Bhāradvāja Bārhaspatya, the rishi ancestor of the Bhāradvāja clan, many members of which are encountered in the suttas. It is unusual to find him listed along with the primary Vedic gods. The Bhāradvāja verses are mostly collected in the sixth book of the Rig Veda, where they show a special devotion to the god Pūṣan.

300. These deities appear nowhere else. *Puṇṇaka* is “full”, *guḷa* is “lump”, and *karatiya* is unclear (“bean-like?”).

301. The *yakkha* Sivaka (“blissful, auspicious”) helped Anāthapiṇḍika visit the Buddha (SN 10.8:1.12); he is possibly to be identified with Shiva. | The dragon king Mucalinda sheltered the Buddha after his awakening (Ud 2.1:2.2).

302. *Yugandhara* is the tutelary deity of the mountain of that name.

303. *Gopāla* is “cowherd”, an epithet of both Krishna and Shiva. | *Suppagedha* (or *supparodha*) is obscure.

304. “Shame”, “conduit” (or “craving”), and “stupidity” seem like odd companions.

305. A saying by Pañcālacaṇḍa at SN 2.7 is quoted by Udāyī and explained by Ānanda at AN 9.42. He would appear to be the wrathful (*caṇḍa*) protector of the Pañcāla clan, but a Pañcālacaṇḍa appears as a brahmin teacher at Aitareya Āraṇyaka 3.1.6. | Āḷavaka is the tutelary deity of Āḷavī (SnP 1.10).

306. *Sumana* is “Happyheart”, *sumukha* is “Fairface”.

Dadhimukha, Maṇi, Māṇivara, Dīgha,³⁰⁷
together with Serīsaka.³⁰⁸

- 11.1 This, dear sir, is the Āṭānāṭiya protection for the guarding, protection, safety, and comfort of the monks, nuns, laymen, and laywomen. Well, now, dear sir, I must go. I have many duties, and much to do.”
- 11.3 “Please, Great Kings, go at your convenience.”
- 11.4 Then the Four Great Kings got up from their seats, bowed, and respectfully circled the Buddha, keeping him on their right side, before vanishing right there. And before the other spirits present vanished, some bowed and respectfully circled the Buddha, keeping him on their right side, some exchanged greetings and polite conversation, some held up their joined palms toward the Buddha, some announced their name and clan, while some kept silent.

The first recitation section is finished.

2. The Second Recitation Section

- 12.1 Then, when the night had passed, the Buddha told the mendicants all that had happened, repeating all the verses spoken. Then he added:
- 13.1 “Mendicants, learn the Āṭānāṭiya protection! Memorize the Āṭānāṭiya protection! Remember the Āṭānāṭiya protection! The Āṭānāṭiya protection is beneficial, and is for the guarding, protection, safety, and comfort of the monks, nuns, laymen, and laywomen.”
- 13.5 That is what the Buddha said. Satisfied, the mendicants approved what the Buddha said.

307. *Dadhimukha* is “Milkface”, and in the *Mahābhārata* is a name of a dragon. | *Maṇi* is “gem”. | *Māṇivara* is “fine gem”, although the commentary takes this as two names. | *Dīgha* is identified by the commentary with *Dīgha Parajana* of MN 31:21.1.

308. *Serīsaka* means “of *sirīsa* wood”, perhaps the tutelary deity of a forest.

DN 33

Reciting in Concert

Saṅgītisutta

SO I HAVE HEARD. At one time the Buddha was wandering in the land of the Mallas together with a large Saṅgha of five hundred mendicants when he arrived at a Mallian town named Pāvā.³⁰⁹ There he stayed in Cunda the smith's mango grove.³¹⁰ 1.1.1

Now at that time a new town hall named Ubbhaṭṭaka had recently been constructed for the Mallas of Pāvā. It had not yet been occupied by an ascetic or brahmin or any person at all.³¹¹ The Mallas 1.2.1

309. This discourse picks up from DN 29:17.1, where the Buddha urges that the Saṅgha should gather and recite the Dhamma for the long lasting of the dispensation. There he lists the 37 factors of awakening, a standard early collation of practice-oriented teachings that are primarily collected in the Mahāvagga of the Saṃyutta Nikāya. This discourse is a late one, and appears to be an initial attempt to compile a more thorough list of the Buddha's teachings. The Sarvāstivāda version of the same discourse formed the basis of one of their seven Abhidhamma books, the Saṅgītiparyāya.

310. At AN 10.176 Cunda asks about the purity of the western brahmins; at DN 16:4.13.5 = Ud 8.5 he offers the Buddha's last meal; at Snp 1.5 he asks about a true ascetic.

311. The completion of a town was celebrated by a talk for the Sakyans SN 35.243:1.2 and MN 53:2.1. Such halls were community meeting places that played a central role in civic society and communal decision-making in democratic republics such as the Mallas and the Sakyans. The Buddha's participation is a sign of his support for their civic and democratic process.

of Pāvā also heard that the Buddha had arrived and was staying in Cunda's mango grove. Then they went up to the Buddha, bowed, sat down to one side, and said to him, "Sir, a new town hall named Ubbhaṭṭaka has recently been constructed for the Mallas of Pāvā. It has not yet been occupied by an ascetic or brahmin or any person at all. May the Buddha be the first to use it, and only then will the Mallas of Pāvā use it. That would be for the lasting welfare and happiness of the Mallas of Pāvā." The Buddha consented in silence.

1.3.1 Then, knowing that the Buddha had consented, the Mallas got up from their seat, bowed, and respectfully circled the Buddha, keeping him on their right. Then they went to the new town hall, where they spread carpets all over, prepared seats, set up a water jar, and placed a lamp. Then they went back to the Buddha, bowed, stood to one side, and told him of their preparations, saying, "Please, sir, come at your convenience."

1.4.1 Then the Buddha robed up and, taking his bowl and robe, went to the new town hall together with the Saṅgha of mendicants. Having washed his feet he entered the town hall and sat against the central column facing east. The Saṅgha of mendicants also washed their feet, entered the town hall, and sat against the west wall facing east, with the Buddha right in front of them. The Mallas of Pāvā also washed their feet, entered the town hall, and sat against the east wall facing west, with the Buddha right in front of them.

1.4.4 The Buddha spent much of the night educating, encouraging, firing up, and inspiring the Mallas with a Dhamma talk. Then he dismissed them, "The night is getting late, Vāseṭṭhas.³¹² Please go at your convenience."

1.4.7 "Yes, sir," replied the Mallas. They got up from their seat, bowed, and respectfully circled the Buddha, keeping him on their right, before leaving.

1.5.1 Soon after they left, the Buddha looked around the Saṅgha of mendicants, who were so very silent. He addressed Venerable

312. As at DN 16:5.19.2, the Mallas are called Vāseṭṭhas after the family lineage of their priest (*purohita*).

Sāriputta, “Sāriputta, the Saṅgha of mendicants is rid of dullness and drowsiness. Give them some Dhamma talk as you feel inspired. My back is sore, I’ll stretch it.”³¹³

“Yes, sir,” Sāriputta replied.

1.5.6

And then the Buddha spread out his outer robe folded in four and laid down in the lion’s posture—on the right side, placing one foot on top of the other—mindful and aware, and focused on the time of getting up.

1.5.7

Now at that time the Jain ascetic of the Nātika clan had recently passed away at Pāvā.³¹⁴ With his passing the Jain ascetics split, dividing into two factions, arguing, quarreling, and disputing, continually wounding each other with barbed words: “You don’t understand this teaching and training. I understand this teaching and training. What, you understand this teaching and training? You’re practicing wrong. I’m practicing right. I stay on topic, you don’t. You said last what you should have said first. You said first what you should have said last. What you’ve thought so much about has been disproved. Your doctrine is refuted. Go on, save your doctrine! You’re trapped; get yourself out of this—if you can!”

1.6.1

You’d think there was nothing but slaughter going on among the Jain ascetics. And the Jain Nātika’s white-clothed lay disciples were disillusioned, dismayed, and disappointed in the Jain ascetics. They were equally disappointed with a teaching and training so poorly explained and poorly propounded, not emancipating, not leading to peace, proclaimed by someone who is not a fully awakened Buddha, with broken monument and without a refuge.

1.6.4

313. The Buddha likewise mentions his bad back and invites another monk to teach in both the other suttas where he is first to teach in a new hall (MN 53:5.3, SN 35.243:3.4), and also on the *uposatha* at Naḷakapāna (AN 10.67, AN 10.68). These were all occasions when the community was sitting late into the night.

314. As at DN 29:1.3 and MN 104:2.1, in both of which the Buddha was in the Sakyan lands at this time. There, the news is conveyed to the Buddha by the novice Cunda. Perhaps he was confused with Cunda the smith.

- 1.7.1 Then Sāriputta told the mendicants about these things. He went on to say, “That’s what happens, reverends, when a teaching and training is poorly explained and poorly propounded, not emancipating, not leading to peace, proclaimed by someone who is not a fully awakened Buddha. But this teaching is well explained and well propounded to us by the Blessed One, emancipating, leading to peace, proclaimed by someone who is a fully awakened Buddha. You should all recite this in concert, without disputing, so that this spiritual path may last for a long time. That would be for the welfare and happiness of the people, out of compassion for the world, for the benefit, welfare, and happiness of gods and humans.
- 1.7.7 And what is that teaching?

1. Ones

- 1.7.10 There are teachings grouped by one that have been rightly explained by the Blessed One, who knows and sees, the perfected one, the fully awakened Buddha.³¹⁵ You should all recite these in concert, without disputing, so that this spiritual path may last for a long time. That would be for the welfare and happiness of the people, out of compassion for the world, for the benefit, welfare, and happiness of gods and humans. What are the teachings grouped by one?
- 1.8.2 All sentient beings are sustained by food.³¹⁶
- 1.8.3 All sentient beings are sustained by conditions.³¹⁷
- 1.8.4 These are the teachings grouped by one that have been rightly explained by the Blessed One, who knows and sees, the perfected

315. Sāriputta adopts the “Aṅguttara principle” of arranging teachings by number rather than the “Saṃyutta principle” of arrangement by topic. Thus this list of teachings has more in common with the Aṅguttara Nikāya than with the Buddha’s original list of Saṃyutta topics. I note unusual or rare terms, but the references here are meant to be indicative rather than comprehensive.

316. AN 10.27:10.5, AN 10.28:4.5, Kp 4:1.2.

317. This phrase is unique, but here *saṅkhārā* (“conditions”) is a synonym of *āhāra* (“food, fuel, nutriment”).

one, the fully awakened Buddha.³¹⁸ You should all recite these in concert, without disputing, so that this spiritual path may last for a long time. That would be for the welfare and happiness of the people, out of compassion for the world, for the benefit, welfare, and happiness of gods and humans.

2. Twos

There are teachings grouped by two that have been rightly explained by the Buddha. You should all recite these in concert. What are the teachings grouped by two?

Name and form.	1.9.4
Ignorance and craving for continued existence. ³¹⁹	1.9.5
Views favoring continued existence and views favoring ending existence. ³²⁰	1.9.6
Lack of conscience and prudence.	1.9.7
Conscience and prudence.	1.9.8
Being hard to admonish and having bad friends.	1.9.9
Being easy to admonish and having good friends.	1.9.10
Skill in offenses and skill in resolving offenses. ³²¹	1.9.11
Skill in meditative attainments and skill in emerging from those attainments. ³²²	1.9.12
Skill in the elements and skill in application of mind. ³²³	1.9.13
Skill in the sense fields and skill in dependent origination. ³²⁴	1.9.14
Skill in what is possible and skill in what is impossible. ³²⁵	1.9.15
Integrity and scrupulousness.	1.9.16

318. The paucity of teachings of “one” reflects the fact that the Aṅguttara Nikāya Ones consists mostly of longer teachings that have been split into atoms to artificially create “ones”.

319. AN 4.254:3.2.

320. AN 2.91:1.3, SN 22.80:9.2.

321. These Vinaya concepts also at AN 2.97:1.3.

322. AN 2.163:1.3.

323. AN 2.96:1.3.

324. MN 115:3.3.

325. MN 115:3.3.

- 1.9.17 Patience and gentleness.
- 1.9.18 Friendliness and hospitality.
- 1.9.19 Harmlessness and purity.
- 1.9.20 Lack of mindfulness and lack of situational awareness.
- 1.9.21 Mindfulness and situational awareness.
- 1.9.22 Not guarding the sense doors and eating too much.
- 1.9.23 Guarding the sense doors and moderation in eating.
- 1.9.24 The power of reflection and the power of development.³²⁶
- 1.9.25 The power of mindfulness and the power of immersion.
- 1.9.26 Serenity and discernment.
- 1.9.27 The foundation of serenity and the foundation of exertion.³²⁷
- 1.9.28 Exertion, and not being scattered.
- 1.9.29 Failure in ethics and failure in view.
- 1.9.30 Accomplishment in ethics and accomplishment in view.
- 1.9.31 Purification of ethics and purification of view.
- 1.9.32 Purification of view and making an effort in line with that view.
- 1.9.33 Inspiration, and making a suitable effort when inspired by inspiring places.
- 1.9.34 To never be content with skillful qualities, and to never stop trying.
- 1.9.35 Knowledge and freedom.
- 1.9.36 Knowledge of ending and knowledge of non-arising.³²⁸
- 1.9.37 These are the teachings grouped by two that have been rightly explained by the Buddha. You should all recite these in concert.

326. AN 2.11:1.3.

327. *Samathanimitta* at SN 46.2:14.2 and SN 46.51:11.2; *paggahanimitta* at AN 3.102.

328. “Knowledge of ending” (*khaye nāṇam*) refers to the aggregates; it is discussed at SN 12.23. | “Knowledge of non-arising” (*anuppāde nāṇam*) is the knowledge that one will not be born again.

3. Threes

- There are teachings grouped by three that have been rightly explained by the Buddha. You should all recite these in concert. 1.10.1
- What are the teachings grouped by three?
- Three unskillful roots: greed, hate, and delusion.* 1.10.4
- Three skillful roots: non-greed, non-hate, and non-delusion.* 1.10.6
- Three ways of performing bad conduct: by body, speech, and mind.* 1.10.8
- Three ways of performing good conduct: by body, speech, and mind.* 1.10.10
- Three unskillful thoughts: sensuality, malice, and cruelty.* 1.10.12
- Three skillful thoughts: renunciation, good will, and harmlessness.* 1.10.14
- Three unskillful intentions: sensuality, malice, and cruelty.* 1.10.16
- Three skillful intentions: renunciation, good will, and harmlessness.* 1.10.18
- Three unskillful perceptions: sensuality, malice, and cruelty.* 1.10.20
- Three skillful perceptions: renunciation, good will, and harmlessness.* 1.10.22
- Three unskillful elements: sensuality, malice, and cruelty.* 1.10.24
- Three skillful elements: renunciation, good will, and harmlessness.* 1.10.26
- Another three elements: sensuality, form, and formlessness.* 1.10.28
- Another three elements: form, formlessness, and cessation.* 1.10.30
- Another three elements: lower, middle, and higher.³²⁹* 1.10.32
- Three cravings: for sensual pleasures, to continue existence, and to end existence.* 1.10.34
- Another three cravings: sensuality, form, and formlessness.* 1.10.36
- Another three cravings: form, formlessness, and cessation.* 1.10.38
- Three fetters: substantialist view, doubt, and misapprehension of precepts and observances.* 1.10.40
- Three defilements: sensuality, desire for continued existence, and ignorance.* 1.10.42

329. SN 14.13, AN 3.76, AN 3.77.

- 1.10.44 *Three realms of existence:* sensual, form, and formless.
- 1.10.46 *Three searches:* for sensual pleasures, for continued existence, and for a spiritual path.
- 1.10.48 *Three kinds of discrimination:* ‘I’m better’, ‘I’m equal’, and ‘I’m worse’.
- 1.10.50 *Three periods:* past, future, and present.
- 1.10.52 *Three extremes:* substantial reality, the origin of substantial reality, and the cessation of substantial reality.³³⁰
- 1.10.54 *Three feelings:* pleasure, pain, and neutral.
- 1.10.56 *Three forms of suffering:* the suffering inherent in painful feeling, the suffering inherent in conditions, and the suffering inherent in perishing.³³¹
- 1.10.58 *Three heaps:* the heap of surety in the wrong way, the heap of surety in the right way, and the heap of lack of surety.³³²
- 1.10.60 *Three darknesses:* one is doubtful, uncertain, undecided, and lacking confidence about the past, future, and present.³³³
- 1.10.62 *Three things a Realized One need not hide:* The Realized One’s behavior by way of body, speech, and mind is pure. He has no misconduct in these three ways that need be hidden, thinking: ‘Don’t let others find this out about me!’³³⁴
- 1.10.69 *Three possessions:* greed, hate, and delusion.
- 1.10.71 *Three fires:* greed, hate, and delusion.
- 1.10.73 *Another three fires:* a fire for those worthy of offerings dedicated to the gods, a fire for householders, and a fire for those worthy of a religious donation.³³⁵

330. At AN 4.33:2.2 cessation is the middle, not an extreme. But SN 22.103 has four extremes.

331. SN 38.14:1.4, SN 45.165:1.3.

332. The “right way” is the eightfold path, the “wrong way” the opposite (SN 45.21. “Surety in the right way” is mentioned often (eg. AN 5.151), but “surety in the wrong way” seems to be found only in later texts. “Lack of surety” is impermanence. And elsewhere these are not said to be “heaps”.

333. Despite the explanation, and the prevalence of reading *kaṅkhā*, the commentary requires the Mahāsaṅgīti reading *tama*.

334. AN 7.58.

335. AN 7.47:12.3.

Threefold classification of the physical: visible and resistant, invisible and resistant, and invisible and non-resistant.³³⁶ 1.10.75

Three choices: good choices, bad choices, and imperturbable choices. 1.10.77

Three individuals: a trainee, an adept, and one who is neither a trainee nor an adept.³³⁷ 1.10.79

Three seniors: a senior by birth, a senior in the teaching, and a senior by convention.³³⁸ 1.10.81

Three grounds for making merit: giving, ethical conduct, and meditation. 1.10.83

Three grounds for accusations: what is seen, heard, and suspected. 1.10.85

Three kinds of sensual rebirth: There are sentient beings who desire what is present. They fall under the sway of presently arisen sensual pleasures. Namely, humans, some gods, and some beings in the underworld. This is the first kind of sensual rebirth. There are sentient beings who desire to create. Having repeatedly created, they fall under the sway of sensual pleasures. Namely, the Gods Who Love to Create. This is the second kind of sensual rebirth. There are sentient beings who desire what is created by others. They fall under the sway of sensual pleasures created by others. Namely, the Gods Who Control the Creations of Others. This is the third kind of sensual rebirth.³³⁹ 1.10.87

Three kinds of pleasant rebirth: There are sentient beings who, having repeatedly given rise to it, dwell in pleasure. Namely, the gods of Brahmā's Host. This is the first pleasant rebirth. There are sentient beings who are drenched, steeped, filled, and soaked with 1.10.94

336. Elsewhere found only in Abhidhamma. "Visible and resistant" refers to material phenomena perceivable by the eye. "Invisible and resistant" is a shorthand for material phenomena that are not perceivable by the eye, but which nonetheless impinge on other senses, such as sounds or smells. "Invisible and non-resistant" includes form perceived solely in the mind.

337. The last item is elsewhere found only in Abhidhamma texts. A "trainee" is a noble one who has at least entered the path to stream-entry; an "adept" (*asekkha*) has completed their training; one who is neither is yet to begin.

338. Only found here.

339. Iti 95.

pleasure. Every so often they feel inspired to exclaim: ‘Oh, what bliss! Oh, what bliss!’ Namely, the gods of streaming radiance. This is the second pleasant rebirth. There are sentient beings who are drenched, steeped, filled, and soaked with pleasure. Since they’re truly content, they experience pleasure. Namely, the gods replete with glory. This is the third pleasant rebirth.³⁴⁰

1.10.104 *Three kinds of wisdom:* the wisdom of a trainee, the wisdom of an adept, and the wisdom of one who is neither a trainee nor an adept.³⁴¹

1.10.106 *Another three kinds of wisdom:* wisdom produced by thought, learning, and meditation.³⁴²

1.10.108 *Three weapons:* learning, seclusion, and wisdom.³⁴³

1.10.110 *Three faculties:* the faculty of understanding that one’s enlightenment is imminent, the faculty of enlightenment, and the faculty of one who is enlightened.³⁴⁴

1.10.112 *Three eyes:* the eye of the flesh, the eye of clairvoyance, and the eye of wisdom.

1.10.114 *Three trainings:* in higher ethics, higher mind, and higher wisdom.

1.10.116 *Three kinds of development:* the development of physical endurance, the development of the mind, and the development of wisdom.³⁴⁵

1.10.118 *Three unsurpassable qualities:* unsurpassable seeing, practice, and freedom.³⁴⁶

1.10.120 *Three kinds of immersion:* Immersion with placing the mind and keeping it connected. Immersion without placing the mind, but

340. The first is unique, the next two from AN 5.170.

341. These are Abhidhamma categories.

342. Otherwise found only in Abhidhamma and other late texts.

343. The “weapon of learning” is at AN 7.67:17.3, the “weapon of wisdom” in verse at Dhṛp 40:3 and Thag 16.3:17.3.

344. Found at SN 48.23:1.3 and Iti 62:2.3, this went on to become a standard Abhidhamma set.

345. The first two at MN 36.

346. MN 35:26.2.

just keeping it connected. Immersion without placing the mind or keeping it connected.³⁴⁷

Another three kinds of immersion: emptiness, signless, and undirected.³⁴⁸ 1.10.122

Three purities: purity of body, speech, and mind.³⁴⁹ 1.10.124

Three kinds of sagacity: sagacity of body, speech, and mind.³⁵⁰ 1.10.126

Three skills: skill in progress, skill in regress, and skill in means.³⁵¹ 1.10.128

Three vanities: the vanity of health, the vanity of youth, and the vanity of life.³⁵² 1.10.130

Three ways of putting something in charge: putting oneself, the world, or the teaching in charge.³⁵³ 1.10.132

Three topics of discussion: You might discuss the past: ‘That is how it was in the past.’ You might discuss the future: ‘That is how it will be in the future.’ Or you might discuss the present: ‘This is how it is at present.’³⁵⁴ 1.10.134

Three knowledges: recollection of past lives, knowledge of the death and rebirth of sentient beings, and knowledge of the ending of defilements. 1.10.141

Three meditative abidings: the heavenly meditation, the divine meditation, and the noble meditation.³⁵⁵ 1.10.143

Three demonstrations: The demonstration of psychic power, the demonstration of revealing, and the demonstration of instruction.³⁵⁶ 1.10.145

These are the teachings grouped by three that have been rightly explained by the Buddha. You should all recite these in concert. 1.10.147

347. SN 43.3:1.2, AN 8.63:5.1.

348. AN 3.183–352:1.3.

349. AN 3.121, Iti 66.

350. AN 3.122, Iti 67.

351. AN 6.79:1.3.

352. AN 3.39:6.3.

353. AN 3.40:1.3.

354. AN 3.67.

355. Called “high and luxurious beds” at AN 3.63:5.3.

356. AN 3.60:8.3.

4. Fours

1.11.1 There are teachings grouped by four that have been rightly explained by the Buddha. You should all recite these in concert. What are the teachings grouped by four?

1.11.4 *Four kinds of mindfulness meditation:* It's when a mendicant meditates by observing an aspect of the body—keen, aware, and mindful, rid of covetousness and displeasure for the world. They meditate observing an aspect of feelings ... mind ... principles—keen, aware, and mindful, rid of covetousness and displeasure for the world.

1.11.9 *Four right efforts:* A mendicant generates enthusiasm, tries, makes an effort, exerts the mind, and strives so that bad, unskillful qualities don't arise. They generate enthusiasm, try, make an effort, exert the mind, and strive so that bad, unskillful qualities that have arisen are given up. They generate enthusiasm, try, make an effort, exert the mind, and strive so that skillful qualities arise. They generate enthusiasm, try, make an effort, exert the mind, and strive so that skillful qualities that have arisen remain, are not lost, but increase, mature, and are completed by development.

1.11.14 *Four bases of psychic power:* A mendicant develops the basis of psychic power that has immersion due to enthusiasm, and active effort. They develop the basis of psychic power that has immersion due to mental development, and active effort. They develop the basis of psychic power that has immersion due to energy, and active effort. They develop the basis of psychic power that has immersion due to inquiry, and active effort.

1.11.19 *Four absorptions:* A mendicant, quite secluded from sensual pleasures, secluded from unskillful qualities, enters and remains in the first absorption, which has the rapture and bliss born of seclusion, while placing the mind and keeping it connected. As the placing of the mind and keeping it connected are stilled, they enter and remain in the second absorption, which has the rapture and bliss born of immersion, with internal clarity and mind at one, without placing the mind and keeping it connected. And

with the fading away of rapture, they enter and remain in the third absorption, where they meditate with equanimity, mindful and aware, personally experiencing the bliss of which the noble ones declare, 'Equanimous and mindful, one meditates in bliss.' Giving up pleasure and pain, and ending former happiness and sadness, they enter and remain in the fourth absorption, without pleasure or pain, with pure equanimity and mindfulness.

Four ways of developing immersion further: There is a way of developing immersion further that leads to blissful meditation in the present life. There is a way of developing immersion further that leads to gaining knowledge and vision. There is a way of developing immersion further that leads to mindfulness and awareness. There is a way of developing immersion further that leads to the ending of defilements. 1.11.24

And what is the way of developing immersion further that leads to blissful meditation in the present life? It's when a mendicant, quite secluded from sensual pleasures, secluded from unskillful qualities, enters and remains in the first absorption ... second absorption ... fourth absorption. This is the way of developing immersion further that leads to blissful meditation in the present life. 1.11.29

And what is the way of developing immersion further that leads to gaining knowledge and vision? A mendicant focuses on the perception of light, concentrating on the perception of day regardless of whether it's night or day. And so, with an open and unenveloped heart, they develop a mind that's full of radiance. This is the way of developing immersion further that leads to gaining knowledge and vision. 1.11.34

And what is the way of developing immersion further that leads to mindfulness and awareness? A mendicant knows feelings as they arise, as they remain, and as they go away. They know perceptions as they arise, as they remain, and as they go away. They know thoughts as they arise, as they remain, and as they go away. This is 1.11.38

the way of developing immersion further that leads to mindfulness and awareness.

1.11.43 And what is the way of developing immersion further that leads to the ending of defilements? A mendicant meditates observing rise and fall in the five grasping aggregates. ‘Such is form, such is the origin of form, such is the ending of form. Such are feelings ... perceptions ... choices ... consciousness, such is the origin of consciousness, such is the ending of consciousness.’ This is the way of developing immersion further that leads to the ending of defilements.³⁵⁷

1.11.51 *Four limitless states:* A mendicant meditates spreading a heart full of love to one direction, and to the second, and to the third, and to the fourth. In the same way above, below, across, everywhere, all around, they spread a heart full of love to the whole world—abundant, expansive, limitless, free of enmity and ill will. They meditate spreading a heart full of compassion ... rejoicing ... equanimity to one direction, and to the second, and to the third, and to the fourth. In the same way above, below, across, everywhere, all around, they spread a heart full of equanimity to the whole world—abundant, expansive, limitless, free of enmity and ill will.³⁵⁸

1.11.56 *Four formless states:* A mendicant, going totally beyond perceptions of form, with the ending of perceptions of impingement, not focusing on perceptions of diversity, aware that ‘space is infinite’, enters and remains in the dimension of infinite space. Going totally beyond the dimension of infinite space, aware that ‘consciousness is infinite’, they enter and remain in the dimension of infinite consciousness. Going totally beyond the dimension of infinite consciousness, aware that ‘there is nothing at all’, they enter and remain in the dimension of nothingness. Going totally be-

357. AN 4.41.

358. These are described as “limitless” in the formula, but this is the only early text they are called the “four limitless states” (or “immeasurables”). This is a sign of systematization.

yond the dimension of nothingness, they enter and remain in the dimension of neither perception nor non-perception.³⁵⁹

Four supports: After appraisal, a mendicant uses some things, endures some things, avoids some things, and gets rid of some things.³⁶⁰ 1.11.61

Four noble traditions: A mendicant is content with any kind of robe, and praises such contentment. They don't try to get hold of a robe in an improper way. They don't get upset if they don't get a robe. And if they do get a robe, they use it untied, uninfatuated, unattached, seeing the drawback, and understanding the escape. And on account of that they don't glorify themselves or put others down. A mendicant who is deft, tireless, aware, and mindful in this is said to stand in the ancient, primordial noble tradition. 1.11.63

Furthermore, a mendicant is content with any kind of almsfood 1.11.66

...

Furthermore, a mendicant is content with any kind of lodgings 1.11.68

...

Furthermore, a mendicant enjoys giving up and loves to give up. They enjoy meditation and love to meditate. But they don't glorify themselves or put down others on account of their love for giving up and meditation. A mendicant who is deft, tireless, aware, and mindful in this is said to stand in the ancient, primordial noble tradition.³⁶¹ 1.11.70

Four efforts: The efforts to restrain, to give up, to develop, and to preserve.³⁶² And what is the effort to restrain? When a mendicant sees a sight with their eyes, they don't get caught up in the features and details. If the faculty of sight were left unrestrained, bad unskillful qualities of covetousness and displeasure would become overwhelming. For this reason, they practice restraint, protecting 1.11.72

359. Often described as "formless", here is the only place we find "four formless states" (*ārūppā*).

360. AN 10.20:6.1.

361. AN 4.28. The sequence of *pahāna* ("giving up") and *bhāvanā* ("meditation") is swapped as compared with AN 4.28:4.1.

362. AN 4.14.

the faculty of sight, and achieving its restraint. When they hear a sound with their ears ... When they smell an odor with their nose ... When they taste a flavor with their tongue ... When they feel a touch with their body ... When they know an idea with their mind, they don't get caught up in the features and details. If the faculty of mind were left unrestrained, bad unskillful qualities of covetousness and displeasure would become overwhelming. For this reason, they practice restraint, protecting the faculty of mind, and achieving its restraint. This is called the effort to restrain.

1.11.84 And what is the effort to give up? It's when a mendicant doesn't tolerate a sensual, malicious, or cruel thought that's arisen, but gives it up, gets rid of it, eliminates it, and obliterates it. They don't tolerate any bad, unskillful qualities that have arisen, but give them up, get rid of them, eliminate them, and obliterate them. This is called the effort to give up.

1.11.90 And what is the effort to develop? It's when a mendicant develops the awakening factors of mindfulness, investigation of principles, energy, rapture, tranquility, immersion, and equanimity, which rely on seclusion, fading away, and cessation, and ripen as letting go. This is called the effort to develop.

1.11.99 And what is the effort to preserve? It's when a mendicant preserves a meditation subject that's a fine foundation of immersion: the perception of a skeleton, a worm-infested corpse, a livid corpse, a split open corpse, or a bloated corpse. This is called the effort to preserve.

1.11.102 *Four knowledges*: knowledge of the present phenomena, inferential knowledge, knowledge of others' minds, and conventional knowledge.³⁶³

1.11.104 *Another four knowledges*: knowing about suffering, the origin of suffering, the cessation of suffering, and the practice that leads to the cessation of suffering.

363. The first two are found at SN 12.33:14.2. The four are found at DN 34:1.5.3.

Four factors of stream-entry: associating with true persons, listening to the true teaching, rational application of mind, and practicing in line with the teaching.³⁶⁴ 1.11.106

Four factors of a stream-enterer: A noble disciple has experiential confidence in the Buddha: ‘That Blessed One is perfected, a fully awakened Buddha, accomplished in knowledge and conduct, holy, knower of the world, supreme guide for those who wish to train, teacher of gods and humans, awakened, blessed.’ They have experiential confidence in the teaching: ‘The teaching is well explained by the Buddha—apparent in the present life, immediately effective, inviting inspection, relevant, so that sensible people can know it for themselves.’ They have experiential confidence in the Saṅgha: ‘The Saṅgha of the Buddha’s disciples is practicing the way that’s good, direct, systematic, and proper. It consists of the four pairs, the eight individuals. This is the Saṅgha of the Buddha’s disciples that is worthy of offerings dedicated to the gods, worthy of hospitality, worthy of a religious donation, worthy of greeting with joined palms, and is the supreme field of merit for the world.’ And a noble disciple’s ethical conduct is loved by the noble ones, unbroken, impeccable, spotless, and unmarred, liberating, praised by sensible people, not mistaken, and leading to immersion.³⁶⁵ 1.11.108

Four fruits of the ascetic life: stream-entry, once-return, non-return, and perfection.³⁶⁶ 1.11.116

Four elements: earth, water, fire, and air. 1.11.118

Four foods: solid food, whether coarse or fine; contact is the second, mental intention the third, and consciousness the fourth.³⁶⁷ 1.11.120

Four bases for consciousness to remain: As long as consciousness remains, it remains involved with form, supported by form, founded on form. And with a sprinkle of relishing, it grows, in- 1.11.122

364. SN 55.50:1.1.

365. This discourse distinguishes the “factors of a stream-enterer” (*sotāpanna-ssa aṅgāni*) from the “factors of stream-entry” (*sotāpattiyāṅgāni*), but elsewhere only the latter term is used SN 12.42:3.1, AN 9.28:4.1.

366. SN 45.35:1.8.

367. MN 9:11.4, SN 12.11:1.5, etc.

creases, and matures. Or consciousness remains involved with feeling ... Or consciousness remains involved with perception ... Or as long as consciousness remains, it remains involved with choices, supported by choices, grounded on choices. And with a sprinkle of relishing, it grows, increases, and matures.³⁶⁸

1.11.127 *Four prejudices: making decisions prejudiced by favoritism, hostility, stupidity, and cowardice.*³⁶⁹

1.11.129 *Four things that give rise to craving: Craving arises in a mendicant for the sake of robes, almsfood, lodgings, or rebirth in this or that state.*³⁷⁰

1.11.134 *Four ways of practice: painful practice with slow insight, painful practice with swift insight, pleasant practice with slow insight, and pleasant practice with swift insight.*³⁷¹

1.11.136 *Another four ways of practice: impatient practice, patient practice, taming practice, and calming practice.*

1.11.138 *Four footprints of the Dhamma: contentment, good will, right mindfulness, and right immersion.*³⁷²

1.11.140 *Four ways of taking up practices: There is a way of taking up practices that is painful now and results in future pain. There is a way of taking up practices that is painful now but results in future pleasure. There is a way of taking up practices that is pleasant now but results in future pain. There is a way of taking up practices that is pleasant now and results in future pleasure.*

1.11.145 *Four spectrums of the teaching: ethics, immersion, wisdom, and freedom.*

1.11.147 *Four powers: energy, mindfulness, immersion, and wisdom.*³⁷³

1.11.149 *Four foundations: the foundations of wisdom, truth, generosity, and peace.*³⁷⁴

368. SN 22.54:2.1, etc.

369. AN 4.18, etc.

370. AN 4.9.

371. AN 4.163.

372. AN 4.29.

373. AN 9.5:1.1.

374. MN 140:11.1.

Four ways of answering questions: There is a question that should be answered categorically. There is a question that should be answered analytically. There is a question that should be answered with a counter-question. There is a question that should be set aside.³⁷⁵ 1.11.151

Four deeds: There are deeds that are dark with dark result. There are deeds that are bright with bright result. There are deeds that are dark and bright with dark and bright result.³⁷⁶ There are neither dark nor bright deeds with neither dark nor bright results, which lead to the ending of deeds.³⁷⁷ 1.11.153

Four things to be realized: Past lives are to be realized with recollection. The passing away and rebirth of sentient beings is to be realized with vision. The eight liberations are to be realized with direct meditative experience. The ending of defilements is to be realized with wisdom.³⁷⁸ 1.11.158

Four floods: the floods of sensuality, desire for rebirth, views, and ignorance.³⁷⁹ 1.11.163

Four yokes: the yokes of sensuality, desire for rebirth, views, and ignorance.³⁸⁰ 1.11.165

Four unyokings: unyoking from the yokes of sensuality, desire for rebirth, views, and ignorance. 1.11.167

Four ties: the personal ties to covetousness, ill will, misapprehension of precepts and observances, and the insistence that this is the only truth.³⁸¹ 1.11.169

Four kinds of grasping: grasping at sensual pleasures, views, precepts and observances, and theories of a self. 1.11.171

375. AN 3.67:2.2.

376. By treating ethical decisions via a tetralemma, the Buddha rejects the “law of the excluded middle” and the consequent belief that acts must be either right or wrong.

377. MN 57:7.1, AN 4.236.

378. AN 4.189, but the order there is direct experience, recollection, vision, wisdom.

379. SN 35.238:12.2, etc.

380. This and the next at AN 4.10.

381. SN 45.174.

- 1.11.173 *Four kinds of reproduction*: reproduction for creatures born from an egg, from a womb, from moisture, or spontaneously.³⁸²
- 1.11.175 *Four kinds of conception*: Someone is unaware when conceived in their mother's womb, unaware as they remain there, and unaware as they emerge. This is the first kind of conception. Furthermore, someone is aware when conceived in their mother's womb, but unaware as they remain there, and unaware as they emerge. This is the second kind of conception. Furthermore, someone is aware when conceived in their mother's womb, aware as they remain there, but unaware as they emerge. This is the third kind of conception. Furthermore, someone is aware when conceived in their mother's womb, aware as they remain there, and aware as they emerge. This is the fourth kind of conception.³⁸³
- 1.11.180 *Four kinds of reincarnation*: There is a reincarnation where only one's own intention is effective, not that of others. There is a reincarnation where only the intention of others is effective, not one's own. There is a reincarnation where both one's own and others' intentions are effective. There is a reincarnation where neither one's own nor others' intentions are effective.³⁸⁴
- 1.11.185 *Four ways of purifying a religious donation*: There's a religious donation that's purified by the giver, not the recipient. There's a religious donation that's purified by the recipient, not the giver. There's a religious donation that's purified by neither the giver nor the recipient. There's a religious donation that's purified by both the giver and the recipient.³⁸⁵
- 1.11.190 *Four ways of being inclusive*: giving, kindly words, taking care, and equality.³⁸⁶

382. MN 12:32.1. The four describe the births of different kinds of *nāga*, etc. (eg. SN 29.1).

383. DN 28:5.2.

384. AN 4.171.

385. AN 4.78, MN 142:9.1.

386. AN 4.32.

Four ignoble expressions: speech that's false, divisive, harsh, or nonsensical.³⁸⁷ 1.11.192

Four noble expressions: refraining from speech that's false, divisive, harsh, or nonsensical. 1.11.194

Another four ignoble expressions: saying you've seen, heard, thought, or known something, but you haven't. 1.11.196

Another four noble expressions: saying you haven't seen, heard, thought, or known something, and you haven't. 1.11.198

Another four ignoble expressions: saying you haven't seen, heard, thought, or known something, and you have. 1.11.200

Another four noble expressions: saying you've seen, heard, thought, or known something, and you have. 1.11.202

Four persons: One person mortifies themselves, committed to the practice of mortifying themselves. One person mortifies others, committed to the practice of mortifying others. One person mortifies themselves and others, committed to the practice of mortifying themselves and others. One person doesn't mortify either themselves or others, committed to the practice of not mortifying themselves or others. They live without wishes in the present life, extinguished, cooled, experiencing bliss, with self become divine.³⁸⁸ 1.11.204

Another four persons: One person practices to benefit themselves, but not others. One person practices to benefit others, but not themselves. One person practices to benefit neither themselves nor others. One person practices to benefit both themselves and others. 1.11.210

387. This and the next are found in AN 4.250, etc., but there defined, as below, in terms of speech about what you've seen, heard, thought, or known.

388. AN 4.198. | "With self become divine" (*brahmabhūtena attanā*) deliberately echoes Upaniṣadic language. Pali is sometimes said to lack reference to the cosmic Brahman (in neuter), having only the personal Brahmā (in masculine). The grammatical case of *brahma-* in the compound here is undetermined, yet no scholar of Sanskrit would hesitate to interpret the common phrase *brahmabhūtātmanā* in the sense "self become one with the cosmic divinity Brahman". Surely the Pali draws from the same sense, using it to describe Nibbāna.

- 1.11.215 *Another four persons:* the dark bound for darkness, the dark bound for light, the light bound for darkness, and the light bound for light.³⁸⁹
- 1.11.217 *Another four persons:* the confirmed ascetic, the white lotus ascetic, the pink lotus ascetic, and the exquisite ascetic of ascetics.³⁹⁰
- 1.11.219 These are the teachings grouped by four that have been rightly explained by the Buddha. You should all recite these in concert.

The first recitation section is finished.

5. Fives

- 2.1.1 There are teachings grouped by five that have been rightly explained by the Buddha. You should all recite these in concert. What are the teachings grouped by five?
- 2.1.4 *Five aggregates:* form, feeling, perception, choices, and consciousness.³⁹¹
- 2.1.6 *Five grasping aggregates:* form, feeling, perception, choices, and consciousness.
- 2.1.8 *Five kinds of sensual stimulation:* Sights known by the eye that are likable, desirable, agreeable, pleasant, sensual, and arousing. Sounds known by the ear ... Smells known by the nose ... Tastes known by the tongue ... Touches known by the body that are likable, desirable, agreeable, pleasant, sensual, and arousing.
- 2.1.14 *Five destinations:* hell, the animal realm, the ghost realm, humanity, and the gods.³⁹²
- 2.1.16 *Five kinds of stinginess:* stinginess with dwellings, families, material possessions, praise, and the teachings.³⁹³

389. AN 4.85, SN 3.21.

390. AN 4.87, etc.

391. For the distinction between “aggregates” and “grasping aggregates” see SN 22.48, SN 22.82, MN 109.

392. Also at MN 12:35.3. Later the *asura* (“demon” or “titan”) realm was added as the sixth. The number and nature of different realms is always somewhat fluid.

393. AN 5.255:1.3.

Five hindrances: sensual desire, ill will, dullness and drowsiness, 2.1.18
restlessness and remorse, and doubt.

Five lower fetters: substantialist view, doubt, misapprehension of 2.1.20
precepts and observances, sensual desire, and ill will.

Five higher fetters: desire for rebirth in the realm of luminous 2.1.22
form, desire for rebirth in the formless realm, conceit, restlessness,
and ignorance.

Five precepts: refraining from killing living creatures, stealing, 2.1.24
sexual misconduct, lying, and drinking alcohol, which is a basis for
negligence.

Five things that can't be done: A mendicant with defilements 2.1.26
ended can't deliberately take the life of a living creature, take some-
thing with the intention to steal, have sex, tell a deliberate lie, or
store up goods for their own enjoyment like they used to as a lay
person.³⁹⁴

Five losses: loss of relatives, wealth, health, ethics, and view. It 2.1.28
is not because of loss of relatives, wealth, or health that sentient
beings, when their body breaks up, after death, are reborn in a place
of loss, a bad place, the underworld, hell. It is because of loss of
ethics or view that sentient beings, when their body breaks up, after
death, are reborn in a place of loss, a bad place, the underworld,
hell.³⁹⁵

Five endowments: endowment with relatives, wealth, health, 2.1.32
ethics, and view. It is not because of endowment with family,
wealth, or health that sentient beings, when their body breaks
up, after death, are reborn in a good place, a heavenly realm. It is
because of endowment with ethics or view that sentient beings,
when their body breaks up, after death, are reborn in a good place,
a heavenly realm.

Five drawbacks for an unethical person because of their failure in 2.1.36
ethics: Firstly, an unethical person loses substantial wealth on ac-
count of negligence. This is the first drawback. Furthermore, an

394. AN 9.8:3.4, DN 29:26.8, MN 76:51.3.

395. This and the next at AN 5.130.

unethical person gets a bad reputation. This is the second drawback. Furthermore, an unethical person enters any kind of assembly timid and embarrassed, whether it's an assembly of aristocrats, brahmins, householders, or ascetics. This is the third drawback. Furthermore, an unethical person feels lost when they die. This is the fourth drawback. Furthermore, an unethical person, when their body breaks up, after death, is reborn in a place of loss, a bad place, the underworld, hell. This is the fifth drawback.³⁹⁶

2.1.47 *Five benefits for an ethical person because of their accomplishment in ethics:* Firstly, an ethical person gains substantial wealth on account of diligence. This is the first benefit. Furthermore, an ethical person gets a good reputation. This is the second benefit. Furthermore, an ethical person enters any kind of assembly bold and self-assured, whether it's an assembly of aristocrats, brahmins, householders, or ascetics. This is the third benefit. Furthermore, an ethical person dies not feeling lost. This is the fourth benefit. Furthermore, when an ethical person's body breaks up, after death, they're reborn in a good place, a heavenly realm. This is the fifth benefit.

2.1.58 *A mendicant who wants to accuse another should first establish five things in themselves:* I will speak at the right time, not at the wrong time. I will speak truthfully, not falsely. I will speak gently, not harshly. I will speak beneficially, not harmfully. I will speak lovingly, not from secret hate. A mendicant who wants to accuse another should first establish these five things in themselves.³⁹⁷

2.1.65 *Five factors that support meditation:* A mendicant has faith in the Realized One's awakening: 'That Blessed One is perfected, a fully awakened Buddha, accomplished in knowledge and conduct, holy, knower of the world, supreme guide for those who wish to train, teacher of gods and humans, awakened, blessed.' They are rarely ill or unwell. Their stomach digests well, being neither too hot nor too cold, but just right, and fit for meditation. They're not devious or deceitful. They reveal themselves honestly to the

396. Also at AN 5.213, Ud 8.6:4.1, DN 16:1.23.2, and Kd 6:28.4.1.

397. AN 5.167, AN 10.44.

Teacher or sensible spiritual companions. They live with energy roused up for giving up unskillful qualities and embracing skillful qualities. They're strong, staunchly vigorous, not slacking off when it comes to developing skillful qualities. They're wise. They have the wisdom of arising and passing away which is noble, penetrative, and leads to the complete ending of suffering.³⁹⁸

Five pure abodes: Aviha, Atappa, the Gods Fair to See, the Fair Seeing Gods, and Akaniṭṭha.³⁹⁹ 2.1.72

Five non-returns: one who is extinguished between one life and the next, one who is extinguished upon landing, one who is extinguished without extra effort, one who is extinguished with extra effort, and one who heads upstream, going to the Akaniṭṭha realm.⁴⁰⁰ 2.1.74

Five kinds of emotional barrenness: Firstly, a mendicant has doubts about the Teacher. They're uncertain, undecided, and lacking confidence. This being so, their mind doesn't incline toward keenness, commitment, persistence, and striving. This is the first kind of emotional barrenness. Furthermore, a mendicant has doubts about the teaching ... the Saṅgha ... the training ... A mendicant is angry and upset with their spiritual companions, resentful and closed off. This being so, their mind doesn't incline toward keenness, commitment, persistence, and striving. This is the fifth kind of emotional barrenness.⁴⁰¹ 2.1.76

Five emotional shackles: Firstly, a mendicant isn't free of greed, desire, fondness, thirst, passion, and craving for sensual pleasures. This being so, their mind doesn't incline toward keenness, commitment, persistence, and striving. This is the first emotional shackle. Furthermore, a mendicant isn't free of greed for the body ... They're not free of greed for form ... They eat as much as they like until their bellies are full, then indulge in the pleasures of sleep- 2.1.84

398. AN 5.53.

399. See DN 14:3.31.1, MN 120:21–30.7, etc.

400. SN 48.16:1.5, etc.

401. AN 5.205; with the next, AN 10.14:1.1, MN 16.

ing, lying down, and drowsing ... They lead the spiritual life hoping to be reborn in one of the orders of gods, thinking: 'By this precept or observance or fervent austerity or spiritual life, may I become one of the gods!' This being so, their mind doesn't incline toward keenness, commitment, persistence, and striving. This is the fifth emotional shackle.⁴⁰²

2.1.95 *Five faculties:* eye, ear, nose, tongue, and body.

2.1.97 *Another five faculties:* pleasure, pain, happiness, sadness, and equanimity.

2.1.99 *Another five faculties:* faith, energy, mindfulness, immersion, and wisdom.

2.1.101 *Five elements of escape:* Take a case where a mendicant focuses on sensual pleasures, but their mind isn't secure, confident, settled, and decided about them. But when they focus on renunciation, their mind is secure, confident, settled, and decided about it. Their mind is in a good state, well developed, well risen, well freed, and well detached from sensual pleasures. They're freed from the distressing and feverish defilements that arise because of sensual pleasures, so they don't experience that kind of feeling. This is how the escape from sensual pleasures is explained.

2.1.107 Take another case where a mendicant focuses on ill will, but their mind isn't secure ... But when they focus on good will, their mind becomes secure ... Their mind is in a good state ... well detached from ill will. They're freed from the distressing and feverish defilements that arise because of ill will, so they don't experience that kind of feeling. This is how the escape from ill will is explained.

2.1.112 Take another case where a mendicant focuses on harming, but their mind isn't eager ... But when they focus on compassion, their mind becomes secure ... Their mind is in a good state ... well detached from harming. They're freed from the distressing and feverish defilements that arise because of harming, so they don't experience that kind of feeling. This is how the escape from harming is explained.

402. As above, also AN 5.206:1.1.

Take another case where a mendicant focuses on form, but their mind isn't secure ... But when they focus on the formless, their mind becomes secure ... Their mind is in a good state ... well detached from forms. They're freed from the distressing and feverish defilements that arise because of form, so they don't experience that kind of feeling. This is how the escape from forms is explained. 2.1.117

Take a case where a mendicant focuses on substantial reality, but their mind isn't secure, confident, settled, and decided about it. But when they focus on the ending of substantial reality, their mind is secure, confident, settled, and decided about it. Their mind is in a good state, well developed, well risen, well freed, and well detached from substantial reality. They're freed from the distressing and feverish defilements that arise because of substantial reality, so they don't experience that kind of feeling. This is how the escape from substantial reality is explained.⁴⁰³ 2.1.122

Five opportunities for freedom: Firstly, the Teacher or a respected spiritual companion teaches Dhamma to a mendicant. That mendicant feels inspired by the meaning and the teaching in that Dhamma, no matter how the Teacher or a respected spiritual companion teaches it. Feeling inspired, joy springs up. Being joyful, rapture springs up. When the mind is full of rapture, the body becomes tranquil. When the body is tranquil, one feels bliss. And when blissful, the mind becomes immersed. This is the first opportunity for freedom. 2.1.127

Furthermore, it may be that neither the Teacher nor a respected spiritual companion teaches Dhamma to a mendicant. But the mendicant teaches Dhamma in detail to others as they learned and memorized it. ... Or the mendicant recites the teaching in detail as they learned and memorized it. ... Or the mendicant thinks about and considers the teaching in their heart, examining it with the mind as they learned and memorized it. ... Or a meditation subject as a foundation of immersion is properly grasped, focused on, borne in mind, and comprehended with wisdom. That mendicant 2.1.132

403. AN 5.200.

feels inspired by the meaning and the teaching in that Dhamma, no matter how a meditation subject as a foundation of immersion is properly grasped, focused on, borne in mind, and comprehended with wisdom. Feeling inspired, joy springs up. Being joyful, rapture springs up. When the mind is full of rapture, the body becomes tranquil. When the body is tranquil, one feels bliss. And when blissful, the mind becomes immersed. This is the fifth opportunity for freedom.⁴⁰⁴

2.1.139 *Five perceptions that ripen in freedom:* the perception of impermanence, the perception of suffering in impermanence, the perception of not-self in suffering, the perception of giving up, and the perception of fading away.⁴⁰⁵

2.1.141 These are the teachings grouped by five that have been rightly explained by the Buddha. You should all recite these in concert.

6. Sixes

2.2.1 There are teachings grouped by six that have been rightly explained by the Buddha. You should all recite these in concert. What are the teachings grouped by six?

2.2.4 *Six interior sense fields:* eye, ear, nose, tongue, body, and mind.

2.2.6 *Six exterior sense fields:* sights, sounds, smells, tastes, touches, and ideas.

2.2.8 *Six classes of consciousness:* eye, ear, nose, tongue, body, and mind consciousness.

2.2.10 *Six classes of contact:* contact through the eye, ear, nose, tongue, body, and mind.

2.2.12 *Six classes of feeling:* feeling born of contact through the eye, ear, nose, tongue, body, and mind.

2.2.14 *Six classes of perception:* perceptions of sights, sounds, smells, tastes, touches, and ideas.

404. AN 5.26.

405. These five are found at AN 5.72 and AN 5.305, and also as part of longer lists. They are not, however, called “perceptions that ripen in freedom”.

Six bodies of intention: intention regarding sights, sounds, smells, tastes, touches, and ideas. 2.2.16

Six classes of craving: craving for sights, sounds, smells, tastes, touches, and ideas. 2.2.18

Six kinds of disrespect: A mendicant lacks respect and reverence for the Teacher, the teaching, and the Saṅgha, the training, diligence, and hospitality.⁴⁰⁶ 2.2.20

Six kinds of respect: A mendicant has respect and reverence for the Teacher, the teaching, and the Saṅgha, the training, diligence, and hospitality.⁴⁰⁷ 2.2.22

Six preoccupations with happiness: Seeing a sight with the eye, one is preoccupied with a sight that's a basis for happiness. Hearing a sound with the ear ... Smelling an odor with the nose ... Tasting a flavor with the tongue ... 2.2.24

Feeling a touch with the body ... Knowing an idea with the mind, one is preoccupied with an idea that's a basis for happiness.⁴⁰⁸ 2.2.29

Six preoccupations with sadness: Seeing a sight with the eye, one is preoccupied with a sight that's a basis for sadness. ... Knowing an idea with the mind, one is preoccupied with an idea that's a basis for sadness. 2.2.31

Six preoccupations with equanimity: Seeing a sight with the eye, one is preoccupied with a sight that's a basis for equanimity. ... Knowing an idea with the mind, one is preoccupied with an idea that's a basis for equanimity. 2.2.34

Six warm-hearted qualities: Firstly, a mendicant consistently treats their spiritual companions with bodily kindness, both in public and in private. This warm-hearted quality makes for fondness and respect, conducing to inclusion, harmony, and unity, without quarreling. 2.2.37

406. As "roots of arguments" at AN 6.36:1.5 and MN 104:6.5 (see below), and as impossibilities for a stream-enterer at AN 6.92.

407. As a cause for the long lasting of the dispensation at AN 6.40:2.2.

408. At AN 3.61:12.1 and MN 140:10.1 these three sets of six are combined as the "eighteen mental preoccupations".

- 2.2.40 Furthermore, a mendicant consistently treats their spiritual companions with verbal kindness, both in public and in private. This too is a warm-hearted quality.
- 2.2.42 Furthermore, a mendicant consistently treats their spiritual companions with mental kindness, both in public and in private. This too is a warm-hearted quality.
- 2.2.44 Furthermore, a mendicant shares without reservation any material possessions they have gained by legitimate means, even the food placed in the alms-bowl, using them in common with their ethical spiritual companions. This too is a warm-hearted quality.
- 2.2.46 Furthermore, a mendicant lives according to the precepts shared with their spiritual companions, both in public and in private. Those precepts are unbroken, impeccable, spotless, and unmarred, liberating, praised by sensible people, not mistaken, and leading to immersion. This too is a warm-hearted quality.
- 2.2.48 They live according to the view shared with their spiritual companions, both in public and in private. That view is noble and emancipating, and brings one who practices it to the complete ending of suffering. This warm-hearted quality too makes for fondness and respect, conducing to inclusion, harmony, and unity, without quarreling.⁴⁰⁹
- 2.2.50 *Six roots of arguments:* Firstly, a mendicant is irritable and hostile. Such a mendicant lacks respect and reverence for the Teacher, the teaching, and the Saṅgha, and they don't fulfill the training. They create a dispute in the Saṅgha, which is for the hurt and unhappiness of the people, for the harm, hurt, and suffering of gods and humans. If you see such a root of arguments in yourselves or others, you should try to give up this bad thing. If you don't see it, you should practice so that it doesn't come up in the future. That's how to give up this bad root of arguments, so it doesn't come up in the future.
- 2.2.57 Furthermore, a mendicant is offensive and contemptuous ... They're jealous and stingy ... They're devious and deceitful ...

409. AN 6.11.

They have corrupt wishes and wrong view ... They're attached to their own views, holding them tight, and refusing to let go. If you see such a root of arguments in yourselves or others, you should try to give up this bad thing. If you don't see it, you should practice so that it doesn't come up in the future. That's how to give up this bad root of arguments, so it doesn't come up in the future.

Six elements: earth, water, fire, air, space, and consciousness. 2.2.67

Six elements of escape: Take a mendicant who says: 'I've developed the heart's release by love. I've cultivated it, made it my vehicle and my basis, kept it up, consolidated it, and properly implemented it. Yet somehow ill will still occupies my mind.' They should be told, 'Not so, venerable! Don't say that. Don't misrepresent the Buddha, for misrepresentation of the Buddha is not good. And the Buddha would not say that. It's impossible, reverend, it cannot happen that the heart's release by love has been developed and properly implemented, yet somehow ill will still occupies the mind. For it is the heart's release by love that is the escape from ill will.'

Take another mendicant who says: 'I've developed the heart's release by compassion. I've cultivated it, made it my vehicle and my basis, kept it up, consolidated it, and properly implemented it. Yet somehow the thought of harming still occupies my mind.' They should be told, 'Not so, venerable! ... For it is the heart's release by compassion that is the escape from thoughts of harming.'

Take another mendicant who says: 'I've developed the heart's release by rejoicing. I've cultivated it, made it my vehicle and my basis, kept it up, consolidated it, and properly implemented it. Yet somehow discontent still occupies my mind.' They should be told, 'Not so, venerable! ... For it is the heart's release by rejoicing that is the escape from discontent.'

Take another mendicant who says: 'I've developed the heart's release by equanimity. I've cultivated it, made it my vehicle and my basis, kept it up, consolidated it, and properly implemented it. Yet somehow desire still occupies my mind.' They should be told, 'Not

so, venerable! ... For it is the heart's release by equanimity that is the escape from desire.'

2.2.98 Take another mendicant who says: 'I've developed the signless release of the heart. I've cultivated it, made it my vehicle and my basis, kept it up, consolidated it, and properly implemented it. Yet somehow my consciousness still follows after signs.' They should be told, 'Not so, venerable! ... For it is the signless release of the heart that is the escape from all signs.'

2.2.105 Take another mendicant who says: 'I'm rid of the conceit "I am". And I don't regard anything as "I am this". Yet somehow the dart of doubt and indecision still occupies my mind.' They should be told, 'Not so, venerable! Don't say that. Don't misrepresent the Buddha, for misrepresentation of the Buddha is not good. And the Buddha would not say that. It's impossible, reverend, it cannot happen that the conceit "I am" has been done away with, and nothing is regarded as "I am this", yet somehow the dart of doubt and indecision still occupy the mind. For it is the uprooting of the conceit "I am" that is the escape from the dart of doubt and indecision.'⁴¹⁰

2.2.112 *Six unsurpassable things:* the unsurpassable seeing, listening, acquisition, training, service, and recollection.⁴¹¹

2.2.114 *Six topics for recollection:* the recollection of the Buddha, the teaching, the Saṅgha, ethics, generosity, and the deities.

2.2.116 *Six consistent responses:* A mendicant, seeing a sight with their eyes, is neither happy nor sad. They remain equanimous, mindful and aware. Hearing a sound with their ears ... Smelling an odor with their nose ... Tasting a flavor with their tongue ... Feeling a touch with their body ... Knowing an idea with their mind, they're neither happy nor sad. They remain equanimous, mindful and aware.⁴¹²

2.2.120 *Six classes of rebirth:* Someone born into a dark class gives rise to a dark result. Someone born into a dark class gives rise to a bright

410. AN 6.13.

411. AN 6.30.

412. AN 4.195:10.1.

result. Someone born into a dark class gives rise to extinguishment, which is neither dark nor bright. Someone born into a bright class gives rise to a bright result. Someone born into a bright class gives rise to a dark result. Someone born into a bright class gives rise to extinguishment, which is neither dark nor bright.⁴¹³

Six perceptions that help penetration: the perception of impermanence, the perception of suffering in impermanence, the perception of not-self in suffering, the perception of giving up, the perception of fading away, and the perception of cessation.⁴¹⁴

These are the teachings grouped by six that have been rightly explained by the Buddha. You should all recite these in concert.

7. Sevens

There are teachings grouped by seven that have been rightly explained by the Buddha. You should all recite these in concert. What are the teachings grouped by seven?

Seven riches of the noble ones: the riches of faith, ethics, conscience, prudence, learning, generosity, and wisdom.⁴¹⁵

Seven awakening factors: mindfulness, investigation of principles, energy, rapture, tranquility, immersion, and equanimity.

Seven prerequisites for immersion: right view, right thought, right speech, right action, right livelihood, right effort, and right mindfulness.⁴¹⁶

Seven bad qualities: a mendicant is faithless, shameless, imprudent, unlearned, lazy, unmindful, and witless.⁴¹⁷

413. In AN 6.57 this is a response to the doctrine of Pūraṇa Kassapa.

414. At AN 6.142 and AN 6.35, but not called “perceptions that help penetration”.

415. *Ariyadhana* appears to be constructed after *ācariyadhana*, “a teacher’s fee”, and hence *ariya* here would be a noun rather than verb.

416. AN 7.45.

417. AN 7.93.

- 2.3.12 *Seven good qualities:* a mendicant is faithful, conscientious, prudent, learned, energetic, mindful, and wise.⁴¹⁸
- 2.3.14 *Seven aspects of the teachings of the true persons:* a mendicant knows the teachings, knows the meaning, knows themselves, knows moderation, knows the right time, knows assemblies, and knows people.⁴¹⁹
- 2.3.16 *Seven qualifications for graduation:* A mendicant has a keen enthusiasm to undertake the training ... to examine the teachings ... to get rid of desires ... for retreat ... to rouse up energy ... for mindfulness and alertness ... to penetrate theoretically. And they don't lose these desires in the future.⁴²⁰
- 2.3.24 *Seven perceptions:* the perception of impermanence, the perception of not-self, the perception of ugliness, the perception of drawbacks, the perception of giving up, the perception of fading away, and the perception of cessation.⁴²¹
- 2.3.26 *Seven powers:* faith, energy, conscience, prudence, mindfulness, immersion, and wisdom.⁴²²
- 2.3.28 *Seven planes of consciousness:* There are sentient beings that are diverse in body and diverse in perception, such as human beings, some gods, and some beings in the underworld. This is the first plane of consciousness.
- 2.3.31 There are sentient beings that are diverse in body and unified in perception, such as the gods reborn in Brahmā's Host through the first absorption. This is the second plane of consciousness.
- 2.3.33 There are sentient beings that are unified in body and diverse in perception, such as the gods of streaming radiance. This is the third plane of consciousness.

418. AN 7.94.

419. At AN 7.68 *dhmma* in this context is shown to be "teachings", not "qualities".

420. AN 7.20.

421. At AN 7.616, but not called "seven perceptions".

422. AN 7.3, etc.

There are sentient beings that are unified in body and unified in perception, such as the gods replete with glory. This is the fourth plane of consciousness. 2.3.35

There are sentient beings that have gone totally beyond perceptions of form. With the ending of perceptions of impingement, not focusing on perceptions of diversity, aware that ‘space is infinite’, they have been reborn in the dimension of infinite space. This is the fifth plane of consciousness. 2.3.37

There are sentient beings that have gone totally beyond the dimension of infinite space. Aware that ‘consciousness is infinite’, they have been reborn in the dimension of infinite consciousness. This is the sixth plane of consciousness. 2.3.39

There are sentient beings that have gone totally beyond the dimension of infinite consciousness. Aware that ‘there is nothing at all’, they have been reborn in the dimension of nothingness. This is the seventh plane of consciousness.⁴²³ 2.3.41

Seven persons worthy of a religious donation: one freed both ways, one freed by wisdom, a direct witness, one attained to view, one freed by faith, a follower of teachings, and a follower by faith. 2.3.43

Seven underlying tendencies: sensual desire, repulsion, views, doubt, conceit, desire to be reborn, and ignorance. 2.3.45

Seven fetters: attraction, repulsion, views, doubt, conceit, desire to be reborn, and ignorance. 2.3.47

Seven principles for the settlement of any disciplinary issues that might arise: Removal in the presence of those concerned is applicable. Removal by accurate recollection is applicable. Removal due to recovery from madness is applicable. The acknowledgement of the offense is applicable. The decision of a majority is applicable. A verdict of aggravated misconduct is applicable. Covering over with grass is applicable.⁴²⁴ 2.3.49

These are the teachings grouped by seven that have been rightly explained by the Buddha. You should all recite these in concert. 2.3.51

423. AN 7.44.

424. Primarily a Vinaya topic, but also found at AN 7.84.

The second recitation section is finished.

8. Eights

- 3.1.1 There are teachings grouped by eight that have been rightly explained by the Buddha. You should all recite these in concert. What are the teachings grouped by eight?
- 3.1.4 *Eight wrong ways:* wrong view, wrong thought, wrong speech, wrong action, wrong livelihood, wrong effort, wrong mindfulness, and wrong immersion.
- 3.1.6 *Eight right ways:* right view, right thought, right speech, right action, right livelihood, right effort, right mindfulness, and right immersion.
- 3.1.8 *Eight persons worthy of a religious donation:* The stream-enterer and the one practicing to realize the fruit of stream-entry. The once-returner and the one practicing to realize the fruit of once-return. The non-returner and the one practicing to realize the fruit of non-return. The perfected one, and the one practicing for perfection.
- 3.1.10 *Eight grounds for laziness:* Firstly, a mendicant has some work to do. They think: ‘I have some work to do. But while doing it my body will get tired. I’d better have a lie down.’ They lie down, and don’t rouse energy for attaining the unattained, achieving the unachieved, and realizing the unrealized. This is the first ground for laziness.
- 3.1.16 Furthermore, a mendicant has done some work. They think: ‘I’ve done some work. But while working my body got tired. I’d better have a lie down.’ They lie down, and don’t rouse energy... This is the second ground for laziness.
- 3.1.21 Furthermore, a mendicant has to go on a journey. They think: ‘I have to go on a journey. But while walking my body will get tired. I’d better have a lie down.’ They lie down, and don’t rouse energy... This is the third ground for laziness.
- 3.1.26 Furthermore, a mendicant has gone on a journey. They think: ‘I’ve gone on a journey. But while walking my body got tired. I’d

better have a lie down.' They lie down, and don't rouse energy... This is the fourth ground for laziness.

Furthermore, a mendicant has wandered for alms, but they didn't get to fill up on as much food as they like, rough or fine. They think: 'I've wandered for alms, but I didn't get to fill up on as much food as I like, rough or fine. My body is tired and unfit for work. I'd better have a lie down.' They lie down, and don't rouse energy... This is the fifth ground for laziness. 3.1.31

Furthermore, a mendicant has wandered for alms, and they got to fill up on as much food as they like, rough or fine. They think: 'I've wandered for alms, and I got to fill up on as much food as I like, rough or fine. My body is heavy and unfit for work, like I've just eaten a load of beans. I'd better have a lie down.' They lie down, and don't rouse energy... This is the sixth ground for laziness. 3.1.36

Furthermore, a mendicant feels a little sick. They think: 'I feel a little sick. Lying down would be good for me. I'd better have a lie down.' They lie down, and don't rouse energy... This is the seventh ground for laziness. 3.1.41

Furthermore, a mendicant has recently recovered from illness. They think: 'I've recently recovered from illness. My body is weak and unfit for work. I'd better have a lie down.' They lie down, and don't rouse energy for attaining the unattained, achieving the unachieved, and realizing the unrealized. This is the eighth ground for laziness.⁴²⁵ 3.1.47

Eight grounds for arousing energy: Firstly, a mendicant has some work to do. They think: 'I have some work to do. While working it's not easy to focus on the instructions of the Buddhas. I'd better preemptively rouse up energy for attaining the unattained, achieving the unachieved, and realizing the unrealized.' They rouse energy for attaining the unattained, achieving the unachieved, and realizing the unrealized. This is the first ground for arousing energy. 3.1.52

Furthermore, a mendicant has done some work. They think: 'I've done some work. While I was working I wasn't able to focus 3.1.58

425. This and the next at AN 8.80.

on the instructions of the Buddhas. I'd better preemptively rouse up energy.' They rouse up energy... This is the second ground for arousing energy.

3.1.63 Furthermore, a mendicant has to go on a journey. They think: 'I have to go on a journey. While walking it's not easy to focus on the instructions of the Buddhas. I'd better preemptively rouse up energy.' They rouse up energy... This is the third ground for arousing energy.

3.1.69 Furthermore, a mendicant has gone on a journey. They think: 'I've gone on a journey. While I was walking I wasn't able to focus on the instructions of the Buddhas. I'd better preemptively rouse up energy.' They rouse up energy... This is the fourth ground for arousing energy.

3.1.74 Furthermore, a mendicant has wandered for alms, but they didn't get to fill up on as much food as they like, rough or fine. They think: 'I've wandered for alms, but I didn't get to fill up on as much food as I like, rough or fine. My body is light and fit for work. I'd better preemptively rouse up energy.' They rouse up energy... This is the fifth ground for arousing energy.

3.1.79 Furthermore, a mendicant has wandered for alms, and they got to fill up on as much food as they like, rough or fine. They think: 'I've wandered for alms, and I got to fill up on as much food as I like, rough or fine. My body is strong and fit for work. I'd better preemptively rouse up energy.' They rouse up energy... This is the sixth ground for arousing energy.

3.1.84 Furthermore, a mendicant feels a little sick. They think: 'I feel a little sick. It's possible this illness will worsen. I'd better preemptively rouse up energy.' They rouse up energy... This is the seventh ground for arousing energy.

3.1.89 Furthermore, a mendicant has recently recovered from illness. They think: 'I've recently recovered from illness. It's possible the illness will come back. I'd better preemptively rouse up energy for attaining the unattained, achieving the unachieved, and realizing the unrealized.' They rouse energy for attaining the unattained,

achieving the unachieved, and realizing the unrealized. This is the eighth ground for arousing energy.

Eight reasons to give: A person might give a gift after insulting 3.1.94
the recipient. Or they give out of fear. Or they give thinking, ‘They gave to me.’ Or they give thinking, ‘They’ll give to me.’ Or they give thinking, ‘It’s good to give.’ Or they give thinking, ‘I cook, they don’t. It wouldn’t be right for me to not give to them.’ Or they give thinking, ‘By giving this gift I’ll get a good reputation.’ Or they give thinking, ‘This is an adornment and requisite for the mind.’⁴²⁶

Eight rebirths by giving: First, someone gives to ascetics or brahmins 3.1.97
such things as food, drink, clothing, vehicles; garlands, fragrance, and makeup; and bed, house, and lighting. Whatever they give they expect back. They see an affluent aristocrat or brahmin or householder amusing themselves, supplied and provided with the five kinds of sensual stimulation. They think: ‘If only, when my body breaks up, after death, I would be reborn in the company of well-to-do aristocrats or brahmins or householders!’ They settle on that thought, concentrate on it and develop it. As they’ve settled for less and not developed further, their thought leads to rebirth there. But I say that this is only for those of ethical conduct, not for the unethical. The heart’s wish of an ethical person succeeds because of their purity.

Next, someone gives to ascetics or brahmins. Whatever they 3.1.106
give they expect back. And they’ve heard: ‘The Gods of the Four Great Kings are long-lived, beautiful, and very happy.’ They think: ‘If only, when my body breaks up, after death, I would be reborn in the company of the Gods of the Four Great Kings!’ They settle on that thought, concentrate on it and develop it. As they’ve settled for less and not developed further, their thought leads to rebirth there. But I say that this is only for those of ethical conduct, not for the unethical. The heart’s wish of an ethical person succeeds because of their purity.

426. These are just called “gifts” at AN 8.31. The “reasons to give” at AN 8.33 are different.

3.1.115 Next, someone gives to ascetics or brahmins. Whatever they give they expect back. And they've heard: 'The Gods of the Thirty-Three ... the Gods of Yama ... the Joyful Gods ... the Gods Who Love to Create ... the Gods Who Control the Creations of Others are long-lived, beautiful, and very happy.' They think: 'If only, when my body breaks up, after death, I would be reborn in the company of the Gods Who Control the Creations of Others!' They settle on that thought, concentrate on it and develop it. As they've settled for less and not developed further, their thought leads to rebirth there. But I say that this is only for those of ethical conduct, not for the unethical. The heart's wish of an ethical person succeeds because of their purity.

3.1.128 Next, someone gives to ascetics or brahmins such things as food, drink, clothing, vehicles; garlands, fragrance, and makeup; and bed, house, and lighting. Whatever they give they expect back. And they've heard: 'The Gods of Brahmā's Host are long-lived, beautiful, and very happy.' They think: 'If only, when my body breaks up, after death, I would be reborn in the company of the Gods of Brahmā's Host!' They settle on that thought, concentrate on it and develop it. As they've settled for less and not developed further, their thought leads to rebirth there. But I say that this is only for those of ethical conduct, not for the unethical. And for those free of desire, not those with desire. The heart's wish of an ethical person succeeds because of their freedom from desire.⁴²⁷

3.1.138 *Eight assemblies*: the assemblies of aristocrats, brahmins, householders, and ascetics. An assembly of the gods under the Four Great Kings. An assembly of the gods under the Thirty-Three. An assembly of Māras. An assembly of Brahmās.⁴²⁸

3.1.140 *Eight worldly conditions*: gain and loss, fame and disgrace, blame and praise, pleasure and pain.⁴²⁹

427. AN 8.35.

428. AN 8.69.

429. AN 8.6.

Eight dimensions of mastery: Perceiving form internally, someone 3.1.142
sees forms externally, limited, both pretty and ugly. Mastering
them, they perceive: 'I know and see.' This is the first dimension of
mastery.

Perceiving form internally, someone sees forms externally, limit- 3.1.145
less, both pretty and ugly. Mastering them, they perceive: 'I know
and see.' This is the second dimension of mastery.

Not perceiving form internally, someone sees forms externally, 3.1.148
limited, both pretty and ugly. Mastering them, they perceive: 'I
know and see.' This is the third dimension of mastery.

Not perceiving form internally, someone sees forms externally, 3.1.150
limitless, both pretty and ugly. Mastering them, they perceive: 'I
know and see.' This is the fourth dimension of mastery.

Not perceiving form internally, someone sees forms externally 3.1.152
that are blue, with blue color and blue appearance. They're like a
flax flower that's blue, with blue color and blue appearance. Or a
cloth from Varanasi that's smoothed on both sides, blue, with blue
color and blue appearance. Mastering them, they perceive: 'I know
and see.' This is the fifth dimension of mastery.

Not perceiving form internally, someone sees forms externally 3.1.156
that are yellow, with yellow color and yellow appearance. They're
like a champak flower that's yellow, with yellow color and yellow
appearance. Or a cloth from Varanasi that's smoothed on both
sides, yellow, with yellow color and yellow appearance. Mastering
them, they perceive: 'I know and see.' This is the sixth dimension
of mastery.

Not perceiving form internally, someone sees forms externally 3.1.160
that are red, with red color and red appearance. They're like a
scarlet mallow flower that's red, with red color and red appearance.
Or a cloth from Varanasi that's smoothed on both sides, red, with
red color and red appearance. Mastering them, they perceive: 'I
know and see.' This is the seventh dimension of mastery.

Not perceiving form internally, someone sees forms externally 3.1.164
that are white, with white color and white appearance. They're

like the morning star that's white, with white color and white appearance. Or a cloth from Varanasi that's smoothed on both sides, white, with white color and white appearance. Mastering them, they perceive: 'I know and see.' This is the eighth dimension of mastery.⁴³⁰

3.1.168 *Eight liberations:* Having physical form, they see forms. This is the first liberation.

3.1.171 Not perceiving physical form internally, they see forms externally. This is the second liberation.

3.1.173 They're focused only on beauty. This is the third liberation.

3.1.175 Going totally beyond perceptions of form, with the ending of perceptions of impingement, not focusing on perceptions of diversity, aware that 'space is infinite', they enter and remain in the dimension of infinite space. This is the fourth liberation.

3.1.177 Going totally beyond the dimension of infinite space, aware that 'consciousness is infinite', they enter and remain in the dimension of infinite consciousness. This is the fifth liberation.

3.1.179 Going totally beyond the dimension of infinite consciousness, aware that 'there is nothing at all', they enter and remain in the dimension of nothingness. This is the sixth liberation.

3.1.181 Going totally beyond the dimension of nothingness, they enter and remain in the dimension of neither perception nor non-perception. This is the seventh liberation.

3.1.183 Going totally beyond the dimension of neither perception nor non-perception, they enter and remain in the cessation of perception and feeling. This is the eighth liberation.⁴³¹

3.1.185 These are the teachings grouped by eight that have been rightly explained by the Buddha. You should all recite these in concert.

430. AN 8.65.

431. AN 8.66.

9. Nines

There are teachings grouped by nine that have been rightly explained by the Buddha. You should all recite these in concert. 3.2.1
What are the teachings grouped by nine?

Nine grounds for resentment: Thinking: ‘They did wrong to me,’ you harbor resentment. Thinking: ‘They are doing wrong to me’ ... ‘They will do wrong to me’ ... ‘They did wrong by someone I love’ ... ‘They are doing wrong by someone I love’ ... ‘They will do wrong by someone I love’ ... ‘They helped someone I dislike’ ... ‘They are helping someone I dislike’ ... Thinking: ‘They will help someone I dislike,’ you harbor resentment.⁴³² 3.2.4

Nine methods to get rid of resentment: Thinking: ‘They did wrong to me, but what can I possibly do?’ you get rid of resentment. Thinking: ‘They are doing wrong to me ...’ ... ‘They will do wrong to me ...’ ... ‘They did wrong by someone I love ...’ ... ‘They are doing wrong by someone I love ...’ ... ‘They will do wrong by someone I love ...’ ... ‘They helped someone I dislike ...’ ... ‘They are helping someone I dislike ...’ ... Thinking: ‘They will help someone I dislike, but what can I possibly do?’ you get rid of resentment. 3.2.14

Nine abodes of sentient beings: There are sentient beings that are diverse in body and diverse in perception, such as human beings, some gods, and some beings in the underworld. This is the first abode of sentient beings. 3.2.24

There are sentient beings that are diverse in body and unified in perception, such as the gods reborn in Brahmā’s Host through the first absorption. This is the second abode of sentient beings. 3.2.27

There are sentient beings that are unified in body and diverse in perception, such as the gods of streaming radiance. This is the third abode of sentient beings. 3.2.29

432. AN 9.29.

- 3.2.31 There are sentient beings that are unified in body and unified in perception, such as the gods replete with glory. This is the fourth abode of sentient beings.
- 3.2.33 There are sentient beings that are non-percipient and do not experience anything, such as the gods who are non-percipient beings. This is the fifth abode of sentient beings.
- 3.2.35 There are sentient beings that have gone totally beyond perceptions of form. With the ending of perceptions of impingement, not focusing on perceptions of diversity, aware that ‘space is infinite’, they have been reborn in the dimension of infinite space. This is the sixth abode of sentient beings.
- 3.2.37 There are sentient beings that have gone totally beyond the dimension of infinite space. Aware that ‘consciousness is infinite’, they have been reborn in the dimension of infinite consciousness. This is the seventh abode of sentient beings.
- 3.2.39 There are sentient beings that have gone totally beyond the dimension of infinite consciousness. Aware that ‘there is nothing at all’, they have been reborn in the dimension of nothingness. This is the eighth abode of sentient beings.
- 3.2.41 There are sentient beings that have gone totally beyond the dimension of nothingness. They have been reborn in the dimension of neither perception nor non-perception. This is the ninth abode of sentient beings.⁴³³
- 3.2.43 *Nine lost opportunities for spiritual practice:* Firstly, a Realized One has arisen in the world. He teaches the Dhamma leading to peace, extinguishment, awakening, as proclaimed by the Holy One. But a person has been reborn in hell. This is the first lost opportunity for spiritual practice.
- 3.2.47 Furthermore, a Realized One has arisen in the world. But a person has been reborn in the animal realm. This is the second lost opportunity for spiritual practice.

433. AN 9.24.

Furthermore, a Realized One has arisen in the world. But a 3.2.50
person has been reborn in the ghost realm. This is the third lost
opportunity for spiritual practice.

Furthermore, a Realized One has arisen in the world. But a 3.2.53
person has been reborn among the titans. This is the fourth lost
opportunity for spiritual practice.

Furthermore, a Realized One has arisen in the world. But a 3.2.56
person has been reborn in one of the long-lived orders of gods.
This is the fifth lost opportunity for spiritual practice.

Furthermore, a Realized One has arisen in the world. But a 3.2.59
person has been reborn in the borderlands, among uneducated
foreigners, where monks, nuns, laymen, and laywomen do not go.
This is the sixth lost opportunity for spiritual practice.

Furthermore, a Realized One has arisen in the world. And a 3.2.62
person is reborn in a central country. But they have wrong view and
distorted perspective: ‘There’s no meaning in giving, sacrifice, or
offerings. There’s no fruit or result of good and bad deeds. There’s
no afterlife. There’s no such thing as mother and father, or beings
that are reborn spontaneously. And there’s no ascetic or brahmin
who is rightly comported and rightly practiced, and who describes
the afterlife after realizing it with their own insight.’ This is the
seventh lost opportunity for spiritual practice.

Furthermore, a Realized One has arisen in the world. And a 3.2.66
person is reborn in a central country. But they’re witless, dull,
stupid, and unable to distinguish what is well said from what is
poorly said. This is the eighth lost opportunity for spiritual practice.

Furthermore, a Realized One has arisen in the world. But he 3.2.69
doesn’t teach the Dhamma leading to peace, extinguishment, awak-
ening, as proclaimed by the Holy One. And a person is reborn
in a central country. And they’re wise, bright, clever, and able to
distinguish what is well said from what is poorly said. This is the
ninth lost opportunity for spiritual practice.⁴³⁴

434. Eight at AN 8.29 and DN 34:2.1.122; the ninth here is made by adding the *asura* rebirth.

3.2.72 *Nine progressive meditations:* A mendicant, quite secluded from sensual pleasures, secluded from unskillful qualities, enters and remains in the first absorption, which has the rapture and bliss born of seclusion, while placing the mind and keeping it connected. As the placing of the mind and keeping it connected are stilled, they enter and remain in the second absorption, which has the rapture and bliss born of immersion, with internal clarity and mind at one, without placing the mind and keeping it connected. And with the fading away of rapture, they enter and remain in the third absorption, where they meditate with equanimity, mindful and aware, personally experiencing the bliss of which the noble ones declare, ‘Equanimous and mindful, one meditates in bliss.’ Giving up pleasure and pain, and ending former happiness and sadness, they enter and remain in the fourth absorption, without pleasure or pain, with pure equanimity and mindfulness. Going totally beyond perceptions of form, with the ending of perceptions of impingement, not focusing on perceptions of diversity, aware that ‘space is infinite’, they enter and remain in the dimension of infinite space. Going totally beyond the dimension of infinite space, aware that ‘consciousness is infinite’, they enter and remain in the dimension of infinite consciousness. Going totally beyond the dimension of infinite consciousness, aware that ‘there is nothing at all’, they enter and remain in the dimension of nothingness. Going totally beyond the dimension of nothingness, they enter and remain in the dimension of neither perception nor non-perception. Going totally beyond the dimension of neither perception nor non-perception, they enter and remain in the cessation of perception and feeling.⁴³⁵

3.2.82 *Nine progressive cessations:* For someone who has attained the first absorption, sensual perceptions have ceased. For someone who has attained the second absorption, the placing of the mind and keeping it connected have ceased. For someone who has attained the third absorption, rapture has ceased. For someone who has attained the fourth absorption, breathing has ceased. For some-

435. AN 9.33.

one who has attained the dimension of infinite space, the perception of form has ceased. For someone who has attained the dimension of infinite consciousness, the perception of the dimension of infinite space has ceased. For someone who has attained the dimension of nothingness, the perception of the dimension of infinite consciousness has ceased. For someone who has attained the dimension of neither perception nor non-perception, the perception of the dimension of nothingness has ceased. For someone who has attained the cessation of perception and feeling, perception and feeling have ceased.⁴³⁶

These are the teachings grouped by nine that have been rightly explained by the Buddha. You should all recite these in concert. 3.2.92

10. Tens

There are teachings grouped by ten that have been rightly explained by the Buddha. You should all recite these in concert. What are the teachings grouped by ten? 3.3.1

Ten qualities that serve as protector: Firstly, a mendicant is ethical, restrained in the monastic code, conducting themselves well and seeking alms in suitable places. Seeing danger in the slightest fault, they keep the rules they've undertaken. This is a quality that serves as protector. 3.3.4

Furthermore, a mendicant is very learned, remembering and keeping what they've learned. These teachings are good in the beginning, good in the middle, and good in the end, meaningful and well-phrased, describing a spiritual practice that's entirely full and pure. They are very learned in such teachings, remembering them, reinforcing them by recitation, mentally scrutinizing them, and comprehending them theoretically. This too is a quality that serves as protector. 3.3.8

Furthermore, a mendicant has good friends, companions, and associates. This too is a quality that serves as protector. 3.3.11

436. AN 9.61.

- 3.3.14 Furthermore, a mendicant is easy to admonish, having qualities that make them easy to admonish. They're patient, and take instruction respectfully. This too is a quality that serves as protector.
- 3.3.17 Furthermore, a mendicant is deft and tireless in a diverse spectrum of duties for their spiritual companions, understanding how to go about things in order to complete and organize the work. This too is a quality that serves as protector.
- 3.3.20 Furthermore, a mendicant loves the teachings and is a delight to converse with, being full of joy in the teaching and training. This too is a quality that serves as protector.
- 3.3.23 Furthermore, a mendicant is content with any kind of robes, almsfood, lodgings, and medicines and supplies for the sick. This too is a quality that serves as protector.
- 3.3.26 Furthermore, a mendicant lives with energy roused up for giving up unskillful qualities and embracing skillful qualities. They are strong, staunchly vigorous, not slacking off when it comes to developing skillful qualities. This too is a quality that serves as protector.
- 3.3.29 Furthermore, a mendicant is mindful. They have utmost mindfulness and alertness, and can remember and recall what was said and done long ago.⁴³⁷ This too is a quality that serves as protector.
- 3.3.32 Furthermore, a mendicant is wise. They have the wisdom of arising and passing away which is noble, penetrative, and leads to the complete ending of suffering. This too is a quality that serves as protector.⁴³⁸
- 3.3.35 *Ten universal dimensions of meditation:* Someone perceives the meditation on universal earth above, below, across, undivided and limitless. They perceive the meditation on universal water ... the

437. The pre-Buddhist sense of *sati* is “memory”, while “mindfulness” evolved from the practice of “remembering” scripture, creating an uninterrupted flow state in the present. In this sense, mindfulness can be understood as the element of continuity that knits consciousness together in a coherent stream. Thus when practicing “mindfulness of breathing” one pays continuous attention to the breaths, not “forgetting” what one is doing.

438. AN 10.17, AN 10.18.

meditation on universal fire ... the meditation on universal air ... the meditation on universal blue ... the meditation on universal yellow ... the meditation on universal red ... the meditation on universal white ... the meditation on universal space ... They perceive the meditation on universal consciousness above, below, across, undivided and limitless.⁴³⁹

Ten ways of doing unskillful deeds: killing living creatures, stealing, and sexual misconduct; speech that's false, divisive, harsh, or nonsensical; covetousness, ill will, and wrong view. 3.3.46

Ten ways of doing skillful deeds: refraining from killing living creatures, stealing, and sexual misconduct; refraining from speech that's false, divisive, harsh, or nonsensical; contentment, good will, and right view. 3.3.48

Ten abodes of the noble ones: A mendicant has given up five factors, possesses six factors, has a single guard, has four supports, has eliminated idiosyncratic interpretations of the truth, has totally given up searching, has unsullied intentions, has stilled the physical process, and is well freed in mind and well freed by wisdom. 3.3.50

And how has a mendicant given up five factors? It's when a mendicant has given up sensual desire, ill will, dullness and drowsiness, restlessness and remorse, and doubt. That's how a mendicant has given up five factors. 3.3.52

And how does a mendicant possess six factors? A mendicant, seeing a sight with their eyes, is neither happy nor sad. They remain equanimous, mindful and aware. Hearing a sound with their ears ... Smelling an odor with their nose ... Tasting a flavor with their tongue ... Feeling a touch with their body ... Knowing an idea with their mind, they're neither happy nor sad. They remain equanimous, mindful and aware. That's how a mendicant possesses six factors. 3.3.55

439. AN 10.25. *Kaṣina* means "universal", "totality", and it refers to a measureless state of *jhāna*. In later usage it became a term for a physical object, such as a disk, on which a meditator focused, but it never has this meaning in early texts.

- 3.3.60 And how does a mendicant have a single guard? It's when a mendicant's heart is guarded by mindfulness. That's how a mendicant has a single guard.
- 3.3.63 And how does a mendicant have four supports? After appraisal, a mendicant uses some things, endures some things, avoids some things, and gets rid of some things. That's how a mendicant has four supports.
- 3.3.66 And how has a mendicant eliminated idiosyncratic interpretations of the truth? Different ascetics and brahmins have different idiosyncratic interpretations of the truth. A mendicant has dispelled, eliminated, thrown out, rejected, let go of, given up, and relinquished all these. That's how a mendicant has eliminated idiosyncratic interpretations of the truth.
- 3.3.69 And how has a mendicant totally given up searching? It's when they've given up searching for sensual pleasures, for continued existence, and for a spiritual path. That's how a mendicant has totally given up searching.
- 3.3.72 And how does a mendicant have unsullied intentions? It's when they've given up sensual, malicious, and cruel intentions. That's how a mendicant has unsullied intentions.
- 3.3.75 And how has a mendicant stilled the physical process? It's when, giving up pleasure and pain, and ending former happiness and sadness, they enter and remain in the fourth absorption, without pleasure or pain, with pure equanimity and mindfulness. That's how a mendicant has stilled the physical process.
- 3.3.78 And how is a mendicant well freed in mind? It's when a mendicant's mind is freed from greed, hate, and delusion. That's how a mendicant is well freed in mind.
- 3.3.81 And how is a mendicant well freed by wisdom? It's when a mendicant understands: 'I've given up greed, hate, and delusion, cut them off at the root, made them like a palm stump, obliterated them, so they're unable to arise in the future.' That's how a mendicant's mind is well freed by wisdom.⁴⁴⁰

440. AN 10.19.

Ten qualities of an adept: an adept's right view, right thought, 3.3.86
right speech, right action, right livelihood, right effort, right mind-
fulness, right immersion, right knowledge, and right freedom.⁴⁴¹

Reverends, these are the teachings grouped by ten that have 3.3.88
been rightly explained by the Buddha. You should all recite these
in concert, without disputing, so that this spiritual path may last
for a long time. That would be for the welfare and happiness of the
people, out of compassion for the world, for the benefit, welfare,
and happiness of gods and humans.”

Then the Buddha got up and said to Venerable Sāriputta, “Good, 3.4.1
good, Sāriputta! It's good that you've taught this exposition of the
reciting in concert.”

That is what Venerable Sāriputta said, and the teacher approved. 3.4.4
Satisfied, the mendicants approved what Sāriputta said.

441. AN 10.112.

DN 34

Up to Ten

Dasuttarasutta

- 1.1.1 SO I HAVE HEARD. At one time the Buddha was staying near Campā on the banks of the Gaggarā Lotus Pond together with a large Saṅgha of five hundred mendicants.⁴⁴² There Sāriputta addressed the mendicants:⁴⁴³ “Reverends, mendicants!”
- 1.1.5 “Reverend,” they replied. Sāriputta said this:
- 1.1.7 “I will relate the teachings⁴⁴⁴
up to ten for attaining extinguishment,
for making an end of suffering,
the release from all ties.⁴⁴⁵

442. As in DN 4.

443. This discourse is similar to DN 33; seventy items are shared between the two. Here Sāriputta teaches without prompting. The scheme is more rigorous; items listed according to a specific pattern, then the same pattern is amplified one by one. The constraints of this scheme mean that, while almost all the items listed here are found elsewhere, they are mostly not known by the name used here. This sutta seems a little later than DN 33, but such conclusions should be drawn cautiously; in at least one detail, the absence of the *asura* realm from the “lost opportunities”, the passage here is earlier.

444. The use of a verse to introduce the teachings is unusual.

445. This echoes Chāndogya Upaniṣad 7.26.2, *sarvagranthīnām vipramokṣaḥ*.

1. Groups of One

Reverends, one thing is helpful, one thing should be developed, 1.2.1
 one thing should be completely understood, one thing should
 be given up, one thing makes things worse, one thing leads to
 distinction, one thing is hard to comprehend, one thing should be
 produced, one thing should be directly known, one thing should
 be realized.⁴⁴⁶

What one thing is helpful? Diligence in skillful qualities.⁴⁴⁷ 1.2.2

What one thing should be developed? Mindfulness of the body 1.2.5
 that is full of pleasure.⁴⁴⁸

What one thing should be completely understood? Contact, which 1.2.8
 is accompanied by defilements and is prone to being grasped.⁴⁴⁹

What one thing should be given up? The conceit ‘I am’. 1.2.11

What one thing makes things worse? Irrational application of 1.2.14
 mind.

What one thing leads to distinction? Rational application of mind. 1.2.17

What one thing is hard to comprehend? The heart’s immersion of 1.2.20
 immediate result.⁴⁵⁰

What one thing should be produced? Unshakable knowledge. 1.2.23

What one thing should be directly known? All sentient beings are 1.2.26
 sustained by food.

What one thing should be realized? The unshakable release of the 1.2.29
 heart.

So these ten things that are true, real, and accurate, not unreal, 1.2.32
 not otherwise were rightly awakened to by the Realized One.

446. Each number from one to ten follows this same scheme.

447. Compare SN 3.18:8.2.

448. Compare SN 16.11:12.2.

449. Compare SN 22.48:2.2, but this is the five aggregates rather than contact.

450. This term is only found in the Ratanasutta (Snp 2.1:5.2). It means a kind of meditation that results in the realization of the Dhamma in this very life.

2. Groups of Two

- 1.3.1 Two things are helpful, two things should be developed, two things should be completely understood, two things should be given up, two things make things worse, two things lead to distinction, two things are hard to comprehend, two things should be produced, two things should be directly known, two things should be realized.⁴⁵¹
- 1.3.2 *What two things are helpful?* Mindfulness and situational awareness.
- 1.3.5 *What two things should be developed?* Serenity and discernment.
- 1.3.8 *What two things should be completely understood?* Name and form.
- 1.3.11 *What two things should be given up?* Ignorance and craving for continued existence.
- 1.3.14 *What two things make things worse?* Being hard to admonish and having bad friends.
- 1.3.17 *What two things lead to distinction?* Being easy to admonish and having good friends.
- 1.3.20 *What two things are hard to comprehend?* What are the causes and reasons for the corruption of sentient beings, and what are the causes and reasons for the purification of sentient beings.
- 1.3.23 *What two things should be produced?* Two knowledges: knowledge of ending, and knowledge of non-arising.
- 1.3.27 *What two things should be directly known?* Two elements: the conditioned element and the unconditioned element.⁴⁵²
- 1.3.31 *What two things should be realized?* Knowledge and freedom.
- 1.3.34 So these twenty things that are true, real, and accurate, not unreal, not otherwise were rightly awakened to by the Realized One.

451. See AN 4.254.

452. The “unconditioned element” is Nibbāna, everything else is conditioned.

3. Groups of Three

Three things are helpful, etc. 1.4.1

What three things are helpful? Associating with true persons, 1.4.2
listening to the true teaching, and practicing in line with the teach-
ing.⁴⁵³

What three things should be developed? Three kinds of immersion. 1.4.5
Immersion with placing the mind and keeping it connected. Im-
mersion without placing the mind, but just keeping it connected.
Immersion without placing the mind or keeping it connected.

What three things should be completely understood? Three feelings: 1.4.9
pleasant, painful, and neutral.

What three things should be given up? Three cravings: craving for 1.4.13
sensual pleasures, craving for continued existence, and craving to
end existence.

What three things make things worse? Three unskillful roots: 1.4.17
greed, hate, and delusion.

What three things lead to distinction? Three skillful roots: non- 1.4.21
greed, non-hate, and non-delusion.

What three things are hard to comprehend? Three elements of 1.4.25
escape. Renunciation is the escape from sensual pleasures. The
formless is the escape from form. Cessation is the escape from
whatever is created, conditioned, and dependently originated.⁴⁵⁴

What three things should be produced? Three knowledges: knowl- 1.4.29
edge regarding the past portion, the future portion, and the present
portion.⁴⁵⁵

What three things should be directly known? Three elements: 1.4.33
sensuality, form, and formlessness.

What three things should be realized? Three knowledges: recollec- 1.4.37
tion of past lives, knowledge of the death and rebirth of sentient
beings, and knowledge of the ending of defilements.

453. With the addition of “rational application of mind” at AN 4.249.

454. Iti 72.

455. These three “portions” of knowledge are not found elsewhere, but com-
pare eg. SN 12.34.

- 1.4.41 So these thirty things that are true, real, and accurate, not unreal, not otherwise were rightly awakened to by the Realized One.

4. Groups of Four

- 1.5.1 Four things are helpful, etc.
- 1.5.2 *What four things are helpful?* Four situations: living in a suitable region, relying on true persons, being rightly resolved in oneself, and past merit.⁴⁵⁶
- 1.5.6 *What four things should be developed?* The four kinds of mindfulness meditation. A mendicant meditates by observing an aspect of the body—keen, aware, and mindful, rid of covetousness and displeasure for the world. They meditate observing an aspect of feelings ... mind ... principles—keen, aware, and mindful, rid of covetousness and displeasure for the world.
- 1.5.13 *What four things should be completely understood?* Four foods: solid food, whether coarse or fine; contact is the second, mental intention the third, and consciousness the fourth.
- 1.5.17 *What four things should be given up?* Four floods: sensuality, desire for rebirth, views, and ignorance.
- 1.5.21 *What four things make things worse?* Four yokes: the yokes of sensuality, desire for rebirth, views, and ignorance.
- 1.5.25 *What four things lead to distinction?* Four kinds of unyoking: unyoking from the yokes of sensuality, desire for rebirth, views, and ignorance.
- 1.5.29 *What four things are hard to comprehend?* Four kinds of immersion: immersion liable to decline, stable immersion, immersion that leads to distinction, and immersion that leads to penetration.⁴⁵⁷
- 1.5.33 *What four things should be produced?* Four knowledges: knowledge of the present phenomena, inferential knowledge, knowledge of others' minds, and conventional knowledge.

456. AN 4.31.

457. Described as four "perceptions" at AN 4.179.

What four things should be directly known? The four noble truths: 1.5.37
suffering, the origin of suffering, the cessation of suffering, and the
practice that leads to the cessation of suffering.

What four things should be realized? Four fruits of the ascetic life: 1.5.41
stream-entry, once-return, non-return, and perfection.

So these forty things that are true, real, and accurate, not unreal, 1.5.45
not otherwise were rightly awakened to by the Realized One.

5. Groups of Five

Five things are helpful, etc. 1.6.1

What five things are helpful? Five factors that support meditation. 1.6.2
A mendicant has faith in the Realized One's awakening: 'That
Blessed One is perfected, a fully awakened Buddha, accomplished
in knowledge and conduct, holy, knower of the world, supreme
guide for those who wish to train, teacher of gods and humans,
awakened, blessed.' They are rarely ill or unwell. Their stomach di-
gests well, being neither too hot nor too cold, but just right, and fit
for meditation. They're not devious or deceitful. They reveal them-
selves honestly to the Teacher or sensible spiritual companions.
They live with energy roused up for giving up unskillful qualities
and embracing skillful qualities. They're strong, staunchly vigor-
ous, not slacking off when it comes to developing skillful qualities.
They're wise. They have the wisdom of arising and passing away
which is noble, penetrative, and leads to the complete ending of
suffering.

What five things should be developed? Right immersion with five 1.6.11
factors: pervasion with rapture, pervasion with pleasure, pervasion
with mind, pervasion with light, and the foundation for review-
ing.⁴⁵⁸

458. A different group of five factors of immersion is at AN 5.28; the final factor is the same in both. The first four factors, however, appear only as part of this same group in later texts (Ne 21:5.1, Ps 1.1:246.2, Vb 16:342.2).

- 1.6.15 *What five things should be completely understood?* Five grasping aggregates: form, feeling, perception, choices, and consciousness.
- 1.6.19 *What five things should be given up?* Five hindrances: sensual desire, ill will, dullness and drowsiness, restlessness and remorse, and doubt.
- 1.6.23 *What five things make things worse?* Five kinds of emotional barrenness. Firstly, a mendicant has doubts about the Teacher. They're uncertain, undecided, and lacking confidence. This being so, their mind doesn't incline toward keenness, commitment, persistence, and striving. This is the first kind of emotional barrenness. Furthermore, a mendicant has doubts about the teaching ... the Saṅgha ... the training ... A mendicant is angry and upset with their spiritual companions, resentful and closed off. This being so, their mind doesn't incline toward keenness, commitment, persistence, and striving. This is the fifth kind of emotional barrenness.
- 1.6.36 *What five things lead to distinction?* Five faculties: faith, energy, mindfulness, immersion, and wisdom.
- 1.6.40 *What five things are hard to comprehend?* Five elements of escape. A mendicant focuses on sensual pleasures, but their mind isn't secure, confident, settled, and decided about them. But when they focus on renunciation, their mind is secure, confident, settled, and decided about it. Their mind is in a good state, well developed, well risen, well freed, and well detached from sensual pleasures. They're freed from the distressing and feverish defilements that arise because of sensual pleasures, so they don't experience that kind of feeling. This is how the escape from sensual pleasures is explained.
- 1.6.47 Take another case where a mendicant focuses on ill will, but their mind isn't secure ... But when they focus on good will, their mind becomes secure ... Their mind is in a good state ... well detached from ill will. They're freed from the distressing and feverish defilements that arise because of ill will, so they don't experience that kind of feeling. This is how the escape from ill will is explained.

Take another case where a mendicant focuses on harming, but their mind isn't secure ... But when they focus on compassion, their mind becomes secure ... Their mind is in a good state ... well detached from harming. They're freed from the distressing and feverish defilements that arise because of harming, so they don't experience that kind of feeling. This is how the escape from harming is explained. 1.6.52

Take another case where a mendicant focuses on form, but their mind isn't secure ... But when they focus on the formless, their mind becomes secure ... Their mind is in a good state ... well detached from forms. They're freed from the distressing and feverish defilements that arise because of form, so they don't experience that kind of feeling. This is how the escape from forms is explained. 1.6.57

Take a case where a mendicant focuses on substantial reality, but their mind isn't secure, confident, settled, and decided about it. But when they focus on the ending of substantial reality, their mind is secure, confident, settled, and decided about it. Their mind is in a good state, well developed, well risen, well freed, and well detached from substantial reality. They're freed from the distressing and feverish defilements that arise because of substantial reality, so they don't experience that kind of feeling. This is how the escape from substantial reality is explained. 1.6.62

What five things should be produced? Right immersion with five knowledges. The following knowledges arise for you personally: 'This immersion is blissful now, and results in bliss in the future.' 'This immersion is noble and not of the flesh.' 'This immersion is not cultivated by sinners.' 'This immersion is peaceful and sublime and tranquil and unified, not held in place by forceful suppression.' 'I mindfully enter into and emerge from this immersion.' 1.6.68

What five things should be directly known? Five opportunities for freedom. Firstly, the Teacher or a respected spiritual companion teaches Dhamma to a mendicant. That mendicant feels inspired by the meaning and the teaching in that Dhamma, no matter how the Teacher or a respected spiritual companion teaches it. Feeling 1.6.76

inspired, joy springs up. Being joyful, rapture springs up. When the mind is full of rapture, the body becomes tranquil. When the body is tranquil, one feels bliss. And when blissful, the mind becomes immersed. This is the first opportunity for freedom.

1.6.82 Furthermore, it may be that neither the Teacher nor a respected spiritual companion teaches Dhamma to a mendicant. But the mendicant teaches Dhamma in detail to others as they learned and memorized it. That mendicant feels inspired by the meaning and the teaching in that Dhamma, no matter how they teach it in detail to others as they learned and memorized it. Feeling inspired, joy springs up. Being joyful, rapture springs up. When the mind is full of rapture, the body becomes tranquil. When the body is tranquil, one feels bliss. And when blissful, the mind becomes immersed. This is the second opportunity for freedom.

1.6.86 Furthermore, it may be that neither the Teacher nor ... the mendicant teaches Dhamma. But the mendicant recites the teaching in detail as they learned and memorized it. That mendicant feels inspired by the meaning and the teaching in that Dhamma, no matter how they recite it in detail as they learned and memorized it. Feeling inspired, joy springs up. Being joyful, rapture springs up. When the mind is full of rapture, the body becomes tranquil. When the body is tranquil, one feels bliss. And when blissful, the mind becomes immersed. This is the third opportunity for freedom.

1.6.90 Furthermore, it may be that neither the Teacher nor ... the mendicant teaches Dhamma ... nor does the mendicant recite the teaching. But the mendicant thinks about and considers the teaching in their heart, examining it with the mind as they learned and memorized it. That mendicant feels inspired by the meaning and the teaching in that Dhamma, no matter how they think about and consider it in their heart, examining it with the mind as they learned and memorized it. Feeling inspired, joy springs up. Being joyful, rapture springs up. When the mind is full of rapture, the body becomes tranquil. When the body is tranquil, one feels bliss.

And when blissful, the mind becomes immersed. This is the fourth opportunity for freedom.

Furthermore, it may be that neither the Teacher nor ... the mendicant teaches Dhamma ... nor does the mendicant recite the teaching ... or think about it. But a meditation subject as a foundation of immersion is properly grasped, focused on, borne in mind, and comprehended with wisdom. That mendicant feels inspired by the meaning and the teaching in that Dhamma, no matter how a meditation subject as a foundation of immersion is properly grasped, focused on, borne in mind, and comprehended with wisdom. Feeling inspired, joy springs up. Being joyful, rapture springs up. When the mind is full of rapture, the body becomes tranquil. When the body is tranquil, one feels bliss. And when blissful, the mind becomes immersed. This is the fifth opportunity for freedom. 1.6.95

What five things should be realized? Five spectrums of the teaching: ethics, immersion, wisdom, freedom, and knowledge and vision of freedom. 1.6.101

So these fifty things that are true, real, and accurate, not unreal, not otherwise were rightly awakened to by the Realized One. 1.6.105

6. Groups of Six

Six things are helpful, etc. 1.7.1

What six things are helpful? Six warm-hearted qualities. Firstly, a mendicant consistently treats their spiritual companions with bodily kindness, both in public and in private. This warm-hearted quality makes for fondness and respect, conducing to inclusion, harmony, and unity, without quarreling. 1.7.2

Furthermore, a mendicant consistently treats their spiritual companions with verbal kindness. 1.7.6

Furthermore, a mendicant consistently treats their spiritual companions with mental kindness. 1.7.7

- 1.7.8 Furthermore, a mendicant shares without reservation any material possessions they have gained by legitimate means, even the food placed in the alms-bowl, using them in common with their ethical spiritual companions.
- 1.7.9 Furthermore, a mendicant lives according to the precepts shared with their spiritual companions, both in public and in private. Those precepts are unbroken, impeccable, spotless, and unmarred, liberating, praised by sensible people, not mistaken, and leading to immersion.
- 1.7.10 Furthermore, a mendicant lives according to the view shared with their spiritual companions, both in public and in private. That view is noble and emancipating, and delivers one who practices it to the complete ending of suffering. This warm-hearted quality makes for fondness and respect, conducing to inclusion, harmony, and unity, without quarreling.
- 1.7.13 *What six things should be developed?* Six topics for recollection: the recollection of the Buddha, the teaching, the Saṅgha, ethics, generosity, and the deities.
- 1.7.17 *What six things should be completely understood?* Six interior sense fields: eye, ear, nose, tongue, body, and mind.
- 1.7.21 *What six things should be given up?* Six classes of craving: craving for sights, sounds, smells, tastes, touches, and ideas.
- 1.7.25 *What six things make things worse?* Six kinds of disrespect. A mendicant lacks respect and reverence for the Teacher, the teaching, and the Saṅgha, the training, diligence, and hospitality.
- 1.7.29 *What six things lead to distinction?* Six kinds of respect. A mendicant has respect and reverence for the Teacher, the teaching, and the Saṅgha, the training, diligence, and hospitality.
- 1.7.33 *What six things are hard to comprehend?* Six elements of escape. Take a mendicant who says: ‘I’ve developed the heart’s release by love. I’ve cultivated it, made it my vehicle and my basis, kept it up, consolidated it, and properly implemented it. Yet somehow ill will still occupies my mind.’ They should be told, ‘Not so, venerable! Don’t say that. Don’t misrepresent the Buddha, for misrepresent-

sensation of the Buddha is not good. And the Buddha would not say that. It's impossible, reverend, it cannot happen that the heart's release by love has been developed and properly implemented, yet somehow ill will still occupies the mind. For it is the heart's release by love that is the escape from ill will.'

Take another mendicant who says: 'I've developed the heart's release by compassion. I've cultivated it, made it my vehicle and my basis, kept it up, consolidated it, and properly implemented it. Yet somehow the thought of harming still occupies my mind.' They should be told, 'Not so, venerable! ... For it is the heart's release by compassion that is the escape from thoughts of harming.'

Take another mendicant who says: 'I've developed the heart's release by rejoicing. ... Yet somehow discontent still occupies my mind.' They should be told, 'Not so, venerable! ... For it is the heart's release by rejoicing that is the escape from discontent.'

Take another mendicant who says: 'I've developed the heart's release by equanimity. ... Yet somehow desire still occupies my mind.' They should be told, 'Not so, venerable! ... For it is the heart's release by equanimity that is the escape from desire.'

Take another mendicant who says: 'I've developed the signless release of the heart. ... Yet somehow my consciousness still follows after signs.' They should be told, 'Not so, venerable! ... For it is the signless release of the heart that is the escape from all signs.'

Take another mendicant who says: 'I'm rid of the conceit "I am". And I don't regard anything as "I am this". Yet somehow the dart of doubt and indecision still occupies my mind.' They should be told, 'Not so, venerable! Don't say that. Don't misrepresent the Buddha, for misrepresentation of the Buddha is not good. And the Buddha would not say that. It's impossible, reverend, it cannot happen that the conceit "I am" has been done away with, and nothing is regarded as "I am this", yet somehow the dart of doubt and indecision still occupy the mind. For it is the uprooting of the conceit "I am" that is the escape from the dart of doubt and indecision.'

- 1.7.70 *What six things should be produced?* Six consistent responses. A mendicant, seeing a sight with their eyes, is neither happy nor sad. They remain equanimous, mindful and aware. Hearing a sound with their ears ... Smelling an odor with their nose ... Tasting a flavor with their tongue ...
- 1.7.76 Feeling a touch with their body ... Knowing an idea with their mind, they're neither happy nor sad. They remain equanimous, mindful and aware.
- 1.7.79 *What six things should be directly known?* Six unsurpassable things: the unsurpassable seeing, listening, acquisition, training, service, and recollection.
- 1.7.83 *What six things should be realized?* Six direct knowledges. A mendicant wields the many kinds of psychic power: multiplying themselves and becoming one again; appearing and disappearing; going unimpeded through a wall, a rampart, or a mountain as if through space; diving in and out of the earth as if it were water; walking on water as if it were earth; flying cross-legged through the sky like a bird; touching and stroking with the hand the sun and moon, so mighty and powerful; controlling the body as far as the Brahmā realm.
- 1.7.86 With clairaudience that is purified and superhuman, they hear both kinds of sounds, human and divine, whether near or far.
- 1.7.87 They understand the minds of other beings and individuals, having comprehended them with their own mind.
- 1.7.90 They recollect many kinds of past lives, with features and details.
- 1.7.91 With clairvoyance that is purified and superhuman, they see sentient beings passing away and being reborn—inferior and superior, beautiful and ugly, in a good place or a bad place. They understand how sentient beings are reborn according to their deeds.
- 1.7.92 They realize the undefiled freedom of heart and freedom by wisdom in this very life. And they live having realized it with their own insight due to the ending of defilements.
- 1.7.94 So these sixty things that are true, real, and accurate, not unreal, not otherwise were rightly awakened to by the Realized One.

7. Groups of Seven

Seven things are helpful, etc. 1.8.1

What seven things are helpful? Seven riches of the noble ones: the riches of faith, ethics, conscience, prudence, learning, generosity, and wisdom. 1.8.2

What seven things should be developed? Seven awakening factors: mindfulness, investigation of principles, energy, rapture, tranquility, immersion, and equanimity. 1.8.6

What seven things should be completely understood? Seven planes of consciousness. There are sentient beings that are diverse in body and diverse in perception, such as human beings, some gods, and some beings in the underworld. This is the first plane of consciousness. 1.8.10

There are sentient beings that are diverse in body and unified in perception, such as the gods reborn in Brahmā's Host through the first absorption. This is the second plane of consciousness. 1.8.14

There are sentient beings that are unified in body and diverse in perception, such as the gods of streaming radiance. This is the third plane of consciousness. 1.8.16

There are sentient beings that are unified in body and unified in perception, such as the gods replete with glory. This is the fourth plane of consciousness. 1.8.18

There are sentient beings that have gone totally beyond perceptions of form. With the ending of perceptions of impingement, not focusing on perceptions of diversity, aware that 'space is infinite', they have been reborn in the dimension of infinite space. This is the fifth plane of consciousness. 1.8.20

There are sentient beings that have gone totally beyond the dimension of infinite space. Aware that 'consciousness is infinite', they have been reborn in the dimension of infinite consciousness. This is the sixth plane of consciousness. 1.8.22

There are sentient beings that have gone totally beyond the dimension of infinite consciousness. Aware that 'there is nothing 1.8.24

at all, they have been reborn in the dimension of nothingness. This is the seventh plane of consciousness.

- 1.8.27 *What seven things should be given up?* Seven underlying tendencies: sensual desire, repulsion, views, doubt, conceit, desire to be reborn, and ignorance.
- 1.8.31 *What seven things make things worse?* Seven bad qualities: a mendicant is faithless, shameless, imprudent, unlearned, lazy, unmindful, and witless.
- 1.8.35 *What seven things lead to distinction?* Seven good qualities: a mendicant is faithful, conscientious, prudent, learned, energetic, mindful, and wise.
- 1.8.39 *What seven things are hard to comprehend?* Seven aspects of the teachings of the true persons: a mendicant knows the teachings, knows the meaning, knows themselves, knows moderation, knows the right time, knows assemblies, and knows people.
- 1.8.43 *What seven things should be produced?* Seven perceptions: the perception of impermanence, the perception of not-self, the perception of ugliness, the perception of drawbacks, the perception of giving up, the perception of fading away, and the perception of cessation.
- 1.8.47 *What seven things should be directly known?* Seven qualifications for graduation. A mendicant has a keen enthusiasm to undertake the training ... to examine the teachings ... to get rid of desires ... for retreat ... to rouse up energy ... for mindfulness and alertness ... to penetrate theoretically. And they don't lose these desires in the future.
- 1.8.57 *What seven things should be realized?* Seven powers of one who has ended the defilements. Firstly, a mendicant with defilements ended has clearly seen with right wisdom all conditions as truly impermanent. This is a power that a mendicant who has ended the defilements relies on to claim: 'My defilements have ended.'
- 1.8.61 Furthermore, a mendicant with defilements ended has clearly seen with right wisdom that sensual pleasures are truly like a pit of glowing coals. ...

Furthermore, the mind of a mendicant with defilements ended 1.8.63
slants, slopes, and inclines to seclusion. They're withdrawn, loving
renunciation, and they've totally done with defiling influences. ...

Furthermore, a mendicant with defilements ended has well de- 1.8.65
veloped the four kinds of mindfulness meditation. ...

Furthermore, a mendicant with defilements ended has well de- 1.8.67
veloped the five faculties. ...

Furthermore, a mendicant with defilements ended has well de- 1.8.69
veloped the seven awakening factors. ...

Furthermore, a mendicant with defilements ended has well de- 1.8.71
veloped the noble eightfold path. ... This is a power that a mendi-
cant who has ended the defilements relies on to claim: 'My defile-
ments have ended.'

So these seventy things that are true, real, and accurate, not 1.8.75
unreal, not otherwise were rightly awakened to by the Realized
One.

The first recitation section is finished.

8. Groups of Eight

Eight things are helpful, etc. 2.1.1

What eight things are helpful? There are eight causes and reasons 2.1.2
that lead to acquiring the wisdom fundamental to the spiritual life,
and to its increase, growth, development, and fulfillment once it
has been acquired. What eight? It's when a mendicant lives relying
on the Teacher or a spiritual companion in a teacher's role. And
they set up a keen sense of conscience and prudence for them, with
warmth and respect. This is the first cause.

When a mendicant lives relying on the Teacher or a spiritual 2.1.7
companion in a teacher's role—with a keen sense of conscience and
prudence for them, with warmth and respect—from time to time
they go and ask them questions: 'Why, sir, does it say this? What
does that mean?' Those venerables clarify what is unclear, reveal

what is obscure, and dispel doubt regarding the many doubtful matters. This is the second cause.

2.1.12 After hearing that teaching they perfect withdrawal of both body and mind. This is the third cause.

2.1.14 Furthermore, a mendicant is ethical, restrained in the monastic code, conducting themselves well and seeking alms in suitable places. Seeing danger in the slightest fault, they keep the rules they've undertaken. This is the fourth cause.

2.1.16 Furthermore, a mendicant is very learned, remembering and keeping what they've learned. These teachings are good in the beginning, good in the middle, and good in the end, meaningful and well-phrased, describing a spiritual practice that's entirely full and pure. They are very learned in such teachings, remembering them, reinforcing them by recitation, mentally scrutinizing them, and comprehending them theoretically. This is the fifth cause.

2.1.18 Furthermore, a mendicant lives with energy roused up for giving up unskillful qualities and embracing skillful qualities. They are strong, staunchly vigorous, not slacking off when it comes to developing skillful qualities. This is the sixth cause.

2.1.20 Furthermore, a mendicant is mindful. They have utmost mindfulness and alertness, and can remember and recall what was said and done long ago. This is the seventh cause.

2.1.22 Furthermore, a mendicant meditates observing rise and fall in the five grasping aggregates. 'Such is form, such is the origin of form, such is the ending of form. Such is feeling, such is the origin of feeling, such is the ending of feeling. Such is perception, such is the origin of perception, such is the ending of perception. Such are choices, such is the origin of choices, such is the ending of choices. Such is consciousness, such is the origin of consciousness, such is the ending of consciousness.' This is the eighth cause.⁴⁵⁹

2.1.30 *What eight things should be developed?* The noble eightfold path, that is: right view, right thought, right speech, right action, right livelihood, right effort, right mindfulness, and right immersion.

459. AN 8.2.

What eight things should be completely understood? Eight worldly conditions: gain and loss, fame and disgrace, blame and praise, pleasure and pain. 2.1.34

What eight things should be given up? Eight wrong ways: wrong view, wrong thought, wrong speech, wrong action, wrong livelihood, wrong effort, wrong mindfulness, and wrong immersion. 2.1.38

What eight things make things worse? Eight grounds for laziness. Firstly, a mendicant has some work to do. They think: ‘I have some work to do. But while doing it my body will get tired. I’d better have a lie down.’ They lie down, and don’t rouse energy for attaining the unattained, achieving the unachieved, and realizing the unrealized. This is the first ground for laziness. 2.1.42

Furthermore, a mendicant has done some work. They think: ‘I’ve done some work. But while working my body got tired. I’d better have a lie down.’ They lie down, and don’t rouse energy... This is the second ground for laziness. 2.1.49

Furthermore, a mendicant has to go on a journey. They think: ‘I have to go on a journey. But while walking my body will get tired. I’d better have a lie down.’ They lie down, and don’t rouse energy... This is the third ground for laziness. 2.1.54

Furthermore, a mendicant has gone on a journey. They think: ‘I’ve gone on a journey. But while walking my body got tired. I’d better have a lie down.’ They lie down, and don’t rouse energy... This is the fourth ground for laziness. 2.1.59

Furthermore, a mendicant has wandered for alms, but they didn’t get to fill up on as much food as they like, rough or fine. They think: ‘I’ve wandered for alms, but I didn’t get to fill up on as much food as I like, rough or fine. My body is tired and unfit for work. I’d better have a lie down.’... This is the fifth ground for laziness. 2.1.64

Furthermore, a mendicant has wandered for alms, and they got to fill up on as much food as they like, rough or fine. They think: ‘I’ve wandered for alms, and I got to fill up on as much food as I like, rough or fine. My body is heavy, unfit for work, like I’ve just 2.1.68

eaten a load of beans. I'd better have a lie down.'... They lie down, and don't rouse energy... This is the sixth ground for laziness.

2.1.73 Furthermore, a mendicant feels a little sick. They think: 'I feel a little sick. Lying down would be good for me. I'd better have a lie down.' They lie down, and don't rouse energy... This is the seventh ground for laziness.

2.1.77 Furthermore, a mendicant has recently recovered from illness. They think: 'I've recently recovered from illness. My body is weak and unfit for work. I'd better have a lie down.' They lie down, and don't rouse energy... This is the eighth ground for laziness.

2.1.84 *What eight things lead to distinction?* Eight grounds for arousing energy. Firstly, a mendicant has some work to do. They think: 'I have some work to do. While working it's not easy to focus on the instructions of the Buddhas. I'd better preemptively rouse up energy for attaining the unattained, achieving the unachieved, and realizing the unrealized.' They rouse energy for attaining the unattained, achieving the unachieved, and realizing the unrealized. This is the first ground for arousing energy.

2.1.90 Furthermore, a mendicant has done some work. They think: 'I've done some work. While I was working I wasn't able to focus on the instructions of the Buddhas. I'd better preemptively rouse up energy'... This is the second ground for arousing energy.

2.1.94 Furthermore, a mendicant has to go on a journey. They think: 'I have to go on a journey. While walking it's not easy to focus on the instructions of the Buddhas. I'd better preemptively rouse up energy'... This is the third ground for arousing energy.

2.1.98 Furthermore, a mendicant has gone on a journey. They think: 'I've gone on a journey. While I was walking I wasn't able to focus on the instructions of the Buddhas. I'd better preemptively rouse up energy'... This is the fourth ground for arousing energy.

2.1.102 Furthermore, a mendicant has wandered for alms, but they didn't get to fill up on as much food as they like, rough or fine. They think: 'I've wandered for alms, but I didn't get to fill up on as much food as I like, rough or fine. My body is light and fit for

work. I'd better preemptively rouse up energy'... This is the fifth ground for arousing energy.

Furthermore, a mendicant has wandered for alms, and they got to fill up on as much food as they like, rough or fine. They think: 'I've wandered for alms, and I got to fill up on as much food as I like, rough or fine. My body is strong and fit for work. I'd better preemptively rouse up energy'... This is the sixth ground for arousing energy. 2.1.106

Furthermore, a mendicant feels a little sick. They think: 'I feel a little sick. It's possible this illness will worsen. I'd better preemptively rouse up energy'... This is the seventh ground for arousing energy. 2.1.111

Furthermore, a mendicant has recently recovered from illness. They think: 'I've recently recovered from illness. It's possible the illness will come back. I'd better preemptively rouse up energy for attaining the unattained, achieving the unachieved, and realizing the unrealized.' They rouse energy for attaining the unattained, achieving the unachieved, and realizing the unrealized. This is the eighth ground for arousing energy. 2.1.115

What eight things are hard to comprehend? Eight lost opportunities for spiritual practice. Firstly, a Realized One has arisen in the world. He teaches the Dhamma leading to peace, extinguishment, awakening, as proclaimed by the Holy One. But a person has been reborn in hell. This is the first lost opportunity for spiritual practice. 2.1.121

Furthermore, a Realized One has arisen in the world. But a person has been reborn in the animal realm. This is the second lost opportunity for spiritual practice. 2.1.126

Furthermore, a Realized One has arisen in the world. But a person has been reborn in the ghost realm. This is the third lost opportunity for spiritual practice. 2.1.129

Furthermore, a Realized One has arisen in the world. But person has been reborn in one of the long-lived orders of gods. This is the fourth lost opportunity for spiritual practice. 2.1.132

- 2.1.135 Furthermore, a Realized One has arisen in the world. But a person has been reborn in the borderlands, among uneducated foreigners, where monks, nuns, laymen, and laywomen do not go. This is the fifth lost opportunity for spiritual practice.
- 2.1.138 Furthermore, a Realized One has arisen in the world. And a person is reborn in a central country. But they have wrong view and distorted perspective: ‘There’s no meaning in giving, sacrifice, or offerings. There’s no fruit or result of good and bad deeds. There’s no afterlife. There’s no such thing as mother and father, or beings that are reborn spontaneously. And there’s no ascetic or brahmin who is rightly comported and rightly practiced, and who describes the afterlife after realizing it with their own insight.’ This is the sixth lost opportunity for spiritual practice.
- 2.1.142 Furthermore, a Realized One has arisen in the world. And a person is reborn in a central country. But they’re witless, dull, stupid, and unable to distinguish what is well said from what is poorly said. This is the seventh lost opportunity for spiritual practice.
- 2.1.145 Furthermore, a Realized One has arisen in the world. But he doesn’t teach the Dhamma leading to peace, extinguishment, awakening, as announced by the Holy One. And a person is reborn in a central country. And they’re wise, bright, clever, and able to distinguish what is well said from what is poorly said. This is the eighth lost opportunity for spiritual practice.
- 2.1.149 *What eight things should be produced?* Eight thoughts of a great man. ‘This teaching is for those of few wishes, not those of many wishes. It’s for the contented, not those who lack contentment. It’s for the secluded, not those who enjoy company. It’s for the energetic, not the lazy. It’s for the mindful, not the unmindful. It’s for those with immersion, not those without immersion. It’s for the wise, not the witless. This teaching is for those who don’t enjoy proliferating, not for those who enjoy proliferating.’⁴⁶⁰
- 2.1.159 *What eight things should be directly known?* Eight dimensions of mastery. Perceiving form internally, someone sees forms externally,

460. AN 8.30. | Read *nippapañcārāmassāyaṃ* per AN 8.30:3.11.

limited, both pretty and ugly. Mastering them, they perceive: 'I know and see.' This is the first dimension of mastery.

Perceiving form internally, someone sees forms externally, limitless, both pretty and ugly. Mastering them, they perceive: 'I know and see.' This is the second dimension of mastery. 2.1.164

Not perceiving form internally, someone sees forms externally, limited, both pretty and ugly. Mastering them, they perceive: 'I know and see.' This is the third dimension of mastery. 2.1.167

Not perceiving form internally, someone sees forms externally, limitless, both pretty and ugly. Mastering them, they perceive: 'I know and see.' This is the fourth dimension of mastery. 2.1.170

Not perceiving form internally, someone sees forms externally that are blue, with blue color and blue appearance. They're like a flax flower that's blue, with blue color and blue appearance. Or a cloth from Varanasi that's smoothed on both sides, blue, with blue color and blue appearance. Mastering them, they perceive: 'I know and see.' This is the fifth dimension of mastery. 2.1.173

Not perceiving form internally, someone sees forms externally that are yellow, with yellow color and yellow appearance. They're like a champak flower that's yellow, with yellow color and yellow appearance. Or a cloth from Varanasi that's smoothed on both sides, yellow, with yellow color and yellow appearance. Mastering them, they perceive: 'I know and see.' This is the sixth dimension of mastery. 2.1.177

Not perceiving form internally, someone sees forms externally that are red, with red color and red appearance. They're like a scarlet mallow flower that's red, with red color and red appearance. Or a cloth from Varanasi that's smoothed on both sides, red, with red color and red appearance. Mastering them, they perceive: 'I know and see.' This is the seventh dimension of mastery. 2.1.181

Not perceiving form internally, someone sees forms externally that are white, with white color and white appearance. They're like the morning star that's white, with white color and white appearance. Or a cloth from Varanasi that's smoothed on both sides, 2.1.185

white, with white color and white appearance. Mastering them, they perceive: ‘I know and see.’ This is the eighth dimension of mastery.

- 2.1.190 *What eight things should be realized?* Eight liberations. Having physical form, they see forms. This is the first liberation.
- 2.1.194 Not perceiving physical form internally, someone see forms externally. This is the second liberation.
- 2.1.196 They’re focused only on beauty. This is the third liberation.
- 2.1.198 Going totally beyond perceptions of form, with the ending of perceptions of impingement, not focusing on perceptions of diversity, aware that ‘space is infinite’, they enter and remain in the dimension of infinite space. This is the fourth liberation.
- 2.1.200 Going totally beyond the dimension of infinite space, aware that ‘consciousness is infinite’, they enter and remain in the dimension of infinite consciousness. This is the fifth liberation.
- 2.1.202 Going totally beyond the dimension of infinite consciousness, aware that ‘there is nothing at all’, they enter and remain in the dimension of nothingness. This is the sixth liberation.
- 2.1.204 Going totally beyond the dimension of nothingness, they enter and remain in the dimension of neither perception nor non-perception. This is the seventh liberation.
- 2.1.206 Going totally beyond the dimension of neither perception nor non-perception, they enter and remain in the cessation of perception and feeling. This is the eighth liberation.
- 2.1.209 So these eighty things that are true, real, and accurate, not unreal, not otherwise were rightly awakened to by the Realized One.

9. Groups of Nine

- 2.2.1 Nine things are helpful, etc.
- 2.2.2 *What nine things are helpful?* Nine things rooted in rational application of mind. When you apply the mind rationally, joy springs up. When you’re joyful, rapture springs up. When the mind is full of rapture, the body becomes tranquil. When the body is tran-

quail, you feel bliss. And when you're blissful, the mind becomes immersed. When your mind is immersed, you truly know and see. When you truly know and see, you grow disillusioned. Being disillusioned, desire fades away. When desire fades away you're freed.⁴⁶¹

What nine things should be developed? Nine factors of trying to be pure. The factors of trying to be pure in ethics, mind, view, overcoming doubt, knowledge and vision of what is the path and what is not the path, knowledge and vision of the practice, knowledge and vision, wisdom, and freedom.⁴⁶² 2.2.5

What nine things should be completely understood? Nine abodes of sentient beings. There are sentient beings that are diverse in body and diverse in perception, such as human beings, some gods, and some beings in the underworld. This is the first abode of sentient beings. 2.2.9

There are sentient beings that are diverse in body and unified in perception, such as the gods reborn in Brahmā's Host through the first absorption. This is the second abode of sentient beings. 2.2.13

There are sentient beings that are unified in body and diverse in perception, such as the gods of streaming radiance. This is the third abode of sentient beings. 2.2.15

There are sentient beings that are unified in body and unified in perception, such as the gods replete with glory. This is the fourth abode of sentient beings. 2.2.17

There are sentient beings that are non-percipient and do not experience anything, such as the gods who are non-percipient beings. This is the fifth abode of sentient beings. 2.2.19

There are sentient beings that have gone totally beyond perceptions of form. With the ending of perceptions of impingement, not focusing on perceptions of diversity, aware that 'space is infinite', 2.2.21

461. Similar sequences are found throughout the suttas, but this exact sequence appears to be unique.

462. Four are found at AN 4.194. Seven, phrased slightly differently, are found at MN 23.

they have been reborn in the dimension of infinite space. This is the sixth abode of sentient beings.

2.2.23 There are sentient beings that have gone totally beyond the dimension of infinite space. Aware that ‘consciousness is infinite’, they have been reborn in the dimension of infinite consciousness. This is the seventh abode of sentient beings.

2.2.25 There are sentient beings that have gone totally beyond the dimension of infinite consciousness. Aware that ‘there is nothing at all’, they have been reborn in the dimension of nothingness. This is the eighth abode of sentient beings.

2.2.27 There are sentient beings that have gone totally beyond the dimension of nothingness. They have been reborn in the dimension of neither perception nor non-perception. This is the ninth abode of sentient beings.

2.2.30 *What nine things should be given up?* Nine things rooted in craving. Craving is a cause of seeking. Seeking is a cause of gaining material possessions. Gaining material possessions is a cause of evaluation. Evaluation is a cause of desire and lust. Desire and lust is a cause of attachment. Attachment is a cause of ownership. Ownership is a cause of stinginess. Stinginess is a cause of safeguarding. Owing to safeguarding, many bad, unskillful things come to be: taking up the rod and the sword, quarrels, arguments, disputes, accusations, divisive speech, and lies.⁴⁶³

2.2.34 *What nine things make things worse?* Nine grounds for resentment. Thinking: ‘They did wrong to me,’ you harbor resentment. Thinking: ‘They are doing wrong to me’ ... ‘They will do wrong to me’ ... ‘They did wrong by someone I love’ ... ‘They are doing wrong by someone I love’ ... ‘They will do wrong by someone I love’ ... ‘They helped someone I dislike’ ... ‘They are helping someone I dislike’ ... Thinking: ‘They will help someone I dislike,’ you harbor resentment.

2.2.46 *What nine things lead to distinction?* Nine methods to get rid of resentment. Thinking: ‘They did wrong to me, but what can I

463. AN 9.23.

possibly do?’ you get rid of resentment. Thinking: ‘They are doing wrong to me ...’ ... ‘They will do wrong to me ...’ ... ‘They did wrong by someone I love ...’ ... ‘They are doing wrong by someone I love ...’ ... ‘They will do wrong by someone I love ...’ ... ‘They helped someone I dislike ...’ ... ‘They are helping someone I dislike ...’ ... Thinking: ‘They will help someone I dislike, but what can I possibly do?’ you get rid of resentment.

What nine things are hard to comprehend? Nine kinds of diversity. 2.2.58
Diversity of elements gives rise to diversity of contacts. Diversity of contacts gives rise to diversity of feelings. Diversity of feelings gives rise to diversity of perceptions. Diversity of perceptions gives rise to diversity of thoughts. Diversity of thoughts gives rise to diversity of desires. Diversity of desires gives rise to diversity of passions. Diversity of passions gives rise to diversity of searches. Diversity of searches gives rise to diversity of gains.⁴⁶⁴

What nine things should be produced? Nine perceptions: the 2.2.62
perceptions of ugliness, death, repulsiveness in food, dissatisfaction with the whole world, impermanence, suffering in impermanence, not-self in suffering, giving up, and fading away.⁴⁶⁵

What nine things should be directly known? Nine progressive 2.2.66
meditations. A mendicant, quite secluded from sensual pleasures, secluded from unskillful qualities, enters and remains in the first absorption ... second absorption ... third absorption ... fourth absorption. Going totally beyond perceptions of form, with the ending of perceptions of impingement, not focusing on perceptions of diversity, aware that ‘space is infinite’, they enter and remain in the dimension of infinite space. Going totally beyond the dimension of infinite space, aware that ‘consciousness is infinite’, they enter and remain in the dimension of infinite consciousness. Going totally beyond the dimension of infinite consciousness, aware that ‘there is nothing at all’, they enter and remain in the dimension of nothingness. Going totally beyond the dimension of nothing-

464. SN 14.9.

465. AN 9.93.

ness, they enter and remain in the dimension of neither perception nor non-perception. Going totally beyond the dimension of neither perception nor non-perception, they enter and remain in the cessation of perception and feeling.

2.2.78 *What nine things should be realized?* Nine progressive cessations.

For someone who has attained the first absorption, sensual perceptions have ceased. For someone who has attained the second absorption, the placing of the mind and keeping it connected have ceased. For someone who has attained the third absorption, rapture has ceased. For someone who has attained the fourth absorption, breathing has ceased. For someone who has attained the dimension of infinite space, the perception of form has ceased. For someone who has attained the dimension of infinite consciousness, the perception of the dimension of infinite space has ceased. For someone who has attained the dimension of nothingness, the perception of the dimension of infinite consciousness has ceased. For someone who has attained the dimension of neither perception nor non-perception, the perception of the dimension of nothingness has ceased. For someone who has attained the cessation of perception and feeling, perception and feeling have ceased.

2.2.90 So these ninety things that are true, real, and accurate, not unreal, not otherwise were rightly awakened to by the Realized One.

10. Groups of Ten

2.3.1 Ten things are helpful, ten things should be developed, ten things should be completely understood, ten things should be given up, ten things make things worse, ten things lead to distinction, ten things are hard to comprehend, ten things should be produced, ten things should be directly known, ten things should be realized.

2.3.2 *What ten things are helpful?* Ten qualities that serve as protector. First, a mendicant is ethical, restrained in the monastic code, conducting themselves well and seeking alms in suitable places.

Seeing danger in the slightest fault, they keep the rules they've undertaken. This is a quality that serves as protector.

Furthermore, a mendicant is learned. This too is a quality that serves as protector. 2.3.7

Furthermore, a mendicant has good friends, companions, and associates. This too is a quality that serves as protector. 2.3.10

Furthermore, a mendicant is easy to admonish, having qualities that make them easy to admonish. They're patient, and take instruction respectfully. This too is a quality that serves as protector. 2.3.13

Furthermore, a mendicant is deft and tireless in a diverse spectrum of duties for their spiritual companions, understanding how to go about things in order to complete and organize the work. This too is a quality that serves as protector. 2.3.16

Furthermore, a mendicant loves the teachings and is a delight to converse with, being full of joy in the teaching and training. This too is a quality that serves as protector. 2.3.19

Furthermore, a mendicant is content with any kind of robes, almsfood, lodgings, and medicines and supplies for the sick. This too is a quality that serves as protector. 2.3.22

Furthermore, a mendicant is energetic. This too is a quality that serves as protector. 2.3.25

Furthermore, a mendicant is mindful. They have utmost mindfulness and alertness, and can remember and recall what was said and done long ago. This too is a quality that serves as protector. 2.3.28

Furthermore, a mendicant is wise. They have the wisdom of arising and passing away which is noble, penetrative, and leads to the complete ending of suffering. This too is a quality that serves as protector. 2.3.31

What ten things should be developed? Ten universal dimensions of meditation. Someone perceives the meditation on universal earth above, below, across, undivided and limitless. They perceive the meditation on universal water ... the meditation on universal fire ... the meditation on universal air ... the meditation on universal blue ... the meditation on universal yellow ... the med- 2.3.35

itation on universal red ... the meditation on universal white ... the meditation on universal space ... They perceive the meditation on universal consciousness above, below, across, undivided and limitless.

2.3.48 *What ten things should be completely understood?* Ten sense fields: eye and sights, ear and sounds, nose and smells, tongue and tastes, body and touches.

2.3.52 *What ten things should be given up?* Ten wrong ways: wrong view, wrong thought, wrong speech, wrong action, wrong livelihood, wrong effort, wrong mindfulness, wrong immersion, wrong knowledge, and wrong freedom.

2.3.56 *What ten things make things worse?* Ten ways of doing unskillful deeds: killing living creatures, stealing, and sexual misconduct; speech that's false, divisive, harsh, or nonsensical; covetousness, ill will, and wrong view.

2.3.60 *What ten things lead to distinction?* Ten ways of doing skillful deeds: refraining from killing living creatures, stealing, and sexual misconduct; avoiding speech that's false, divisive, harsh, or nonsensical; contentment, good will, and right view.

2.3.64 *What ten things are hard to comprehend?* Ten abodes of the noble ones. A mendicant has given up five factors, possesses six factors, has a single guard, has four supports, has eliminated idiosyncratic interpretations of the truth, has totally given up searching, has unsullied intentions, has stilled the physical process, and is well freed in mind and well freed by wisdom.

2.3.67 And how has a mendicant given up five factors? It's when a mendicant has given up sensual desire, ill will, dullness and drowsiness, restlessness and remorse, and doubt. That's how a mendicant has given up five factors.

2.3.70 And how does a mendicant possess six factors? A mendicant, seeing a sight with their eyes, is neither happy nor sad. They remain equanimous, mindful and aware. Hearing a sound with their ears ... Smelling an odor with their nose ... Tasting a flavor with their tongue ...

Feeling a touch with their body ... Knowing an idea with their mind, they're neither happy nor sad. They remain equanimous, mindful and aware. That's how a mendicant possesses six factors. 2.3.75

And how does a mendicant have a single guard? It's when a mendicant's heart is guarded by mindfulness. That's how a mendicant has a single guard. 2.3.78

And how does a mendicant have four supports? After appraisal, a mendicant uses some things, endures some things, avoids some things, and gets rid of some things. That's how a mendicant has four supports. 2.3.81

And how has a mendicant eliminated idiosyncratic interpretations of the truth? Different ascetics and brahmins have different idiosyncratic interpretations of the truth. A mendicant has dispelled, eliminated, thrown out, rejected, let go of, given up, and relinquished all these. That's how a mendicant has eliminated idiosyncratic interpretations of the truth. 2.3.84

And how has a mendicant totally given up searching? It's when they've given up searching for sensual pleasures, for continued existence, and for a spiritual path. That's how a mendicant has totally given up searching. 2.3.87

And how does a mendicant have unsullied intentions? It's when they've given up sensual, malicious, and cruel intentions. That's how a mendicant has unsullied intentions. 2.3.90

And how has a mendicant stilled the physical process? Giving up pleasure and pain, and ending former happiness and sadness, they enter and remain in the fourth absorption, without pleasure or pain, with pure equanimity and mindfulness. That's how a mendicant has stilled the physical process. 2.3.93

And how is a mendicant well freed in mind? It's when a mendicant's mind is freed from greed, hate, and delusion. That's how a mendicant is well freed in mind. 2.3.96

And how is a mendicant well freed by wisdom? It's when a mendicant understands: 'I've given up greed, hate, and delusion, cut them off at the root, made them like a palm stump, obliterated 2.3.99

them, so they're unable to arise in the future.' That's how a mendicant's mind is well freed by wisdom.

2.3.107 *What ten things should be produced?* Ten perceptions: the perceptions of ugliness, death, repulsiveness in food, dissatisfaction with the whole world, impermanence, suffering in impermanence, not-self in suffering, giving up, fading away, and cessation.⁴⁶⁶

2.3.111 *What ten things should be directly known?* Ten grounds for wearing away. For one of right view, wrong view is worn away. And the many bad, unskillful qualities that arise because of wrong view are worn away. For one of right intention, wrong intention is worn away. ... For one of right speech, wrong speech is worn away. ... For one of right action, wrong action is worn away. ... For one of right livelihood, wrong livelihood is worn away. ... For one of right effort, wrong effort is worn away. ... For one of right mindfulness, wrong mindfulness is worn away. ... For one of right immersion, wrong immersion is worn away. ... For one of right knowledge, wrong knowledge is worn away. ... For one of right freedom, wrong freedom is worn away. And the many bad, unskillful qualities that arise because of wrong freedom are worn away.

2.3.126 *What ten things should be realized?* Ten qualities of an adept: an adept's right view, right thought, right speech, right action, right livelihood, right effort, right mindfulness, right immersion, right knowledge, and right freedom.⁴⁶⁷

2.3.130 So these hundred things that are true, real, and accurate, not unreal, not otherwise were rightly awakened to by the Realized One." This is what Venerable Sāriputta said. Satisfied, the mendicants approved what Sāriputta said.

THE LONG DISCOURSES ARE COMPLETED.

466. AN 10.238.

467. The sutta, and hence the Dīgha Nikāya as a whole, ends with the qualities of the arahant, the one who completes the path and practice of the Buddha.

Colophon

The Translator

Bhikkhu Sujato was born as Anthony Aidan Best on 4/11/1966 in Perth, Western Australia. He grew up in the pleasant suburbs of Mt Lawley and Attadale alongside his sister Nicola, who was the good child. His mother, Margaret Lorraine Huntsman née Pinder, said “he’ll either be a priest or a poet”, while his father, Anthony Thomas Best, advised him to “never do anything for money”. He attended Aquinas College, a Catholic school, where he decided to become an atheist. At the University of WA he studied philosophy, aiming to learn what he wanted to do with his life. Finding that what he wanted to do was play guitar, he dropped out. His main band was named Martha’s Vineyard, which achieved modest success in the indie circuit.

A seemingly random encounter with a roadside joey took him to Thailand, where he entered his first meditation retreat at Wat Ram Poeng, Chiang Mai in 1992. Feeling the call to the Buddha’s path, he took full ordination in Wat Pa Nanachat in 1994, where his teachers were Ajahn Pasanno and Ajahn Jayasaro. In 1997 he returned to Perth to study with Ajahn Brahm at Bodhinyana Monastery.

He spent several years practicing in seclusion in Malaysia and Thailand before establishing Santi Forest Monastery in Bundanoon, NSW, in 2003. There he was instrumental in supporting the establishment of the Theravada bhikkhuni order in Australia

and advocating for women's rights. He continues to teach in Australia and globally, with a special concern for the moral implications of climate change and other forms of environmental destruction. He has published a series of books of original and groundbreaking research on early Buddhism.

In 2005 he founded SuttaCentral together with Rod Bucknell and John Kelly. In 2015, seeing the need for a complete, accurate, plain English translation of the Pali texts, he undertook the task, spending nearly three years in isolation on the isle of Qi Mei off the coast of the nation of Taiwan. He completed the four main Nikāyas in 2018, and the early books of the Khuddaka Nikāya were complete by 2021. All this work is dedicated to the public domain and is entirely free of copyright encumbrance.

In 2019 he returned to Sydney where he established Lokanta Vihara (The Monastery at the End of the World).

Creation Process

Primary source was the digital Mahāsaṅgīti edition of the Pali Tipiṭaka. Translated from the Pali, with reference to several English translations, especially those of Bhikkhu Bodhi. Older translations by Maurice Walshe and T.W. and C.A.F. Rhys Davids were also consulted.

The Translation

This translation was part of a project to translate the four Pali Nikāyas with the following aims: plain, approachable English; consistent terminology; accurate rendition of the Pali; free of copyright. It was made during 2016–2018 while Bhikkhu Sujato was staying in Qimei, Taiwan.

About SuttaCentral

SuttaCentral publishes early Buddhist texts. Since 2005 we have provided root texts in Pali, Chinese, Sanskrit, Tibetan, and other languages, parallels between these texts, and translations in many modern languages. Building on the work of generations of scholars, we offer our contribution freely.

SuttaCentral is driven by volunteer contributions, and in addition we employ professional developers. We offer a sponsorship program for high quality translations from the original languages. Financial support for SuttaCentral is handled by the SuttaCentral Development Trust, a charitable trust registered in Australia.

About Bilara

“Bilara” means “cat” in Pali, and it is the name of our Computer Assisted Translation (CAT) software. Bilara is a web app that enables translators to translate early Buddhist texts into their own language. These translations are published on SuttaCentral with the root text and translation side by side.

About SuttaCentral Editions

The SuttaCentral Editions project makes high quality books from selected Bilara translations. These are published in formats including HTML, EPUB, PDF, and print.

You are welcome to print any of our Editions.